BYD SEALION 8

OWNER'S MANUAL



bydauto.co.nz

Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the “WARNING”, "CAUTION”, and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or vehicle damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

WARNING
Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

CAUTION
Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

REMINDER
Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7

Dashboard..... 8

Doors.....9

Interior..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12

Seat Belt Overview..... 12

Using Seat Belts.....12

Airbags..... 15

Airbag Overview..... 15

Airbag Types..... 16

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....18

Child Restraint System.....21

Child Restraint Systems (Configuration 1)..... 21

Child Restraint Systems (Configuration 2)..... 26

Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 32

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....32

Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System..... 35

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 36

Anti-theft Alarm System.....38

Anti-theft Alarm System.....38

Data Collection and Processing..... 39

Data Collection and Processing.....39

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 44

Instrument Cluster View.....44

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....45

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....56

Keys.....56

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 60

Smart Access and Start System..... 67

Child Protection Lock.....69

Seats.....69

Seats.....69

Front Seats.....70

Second Row Seats..... 74

Seat Heating and Ventilation System.....76

Third-Row Seats..... 77

Head Supports.....77

Steering Wheel..... 79

Steering Wheel Switches.....79

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....81

Wipers..... 82

Wiper Switch.....82

Replacing Wiper Blades..... 83

Switches..... 84

Light Switches..... 84

Driver's Door Switches..... 86

Passengers' Window Switches.....87

Hazard Warning Light Switch.....87

Front passenger airbag switch.....87

Panoramic Sunroof*.....88

Emergency Call (E-Call).....89

Interior Light Switch.....90

Side Mirrors.....91

Interior Rearview Mirror.....91

Power Side Mirrors..... 92

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging Instructions.... 94

Charging Instructions.....94

Charging.....98

Discharging Instructions*.....103

Target SOC Setting..... 105

Charge Port Anti-theft Lock..... 107

Battery.....109

High-Voltage Battery..... 109

Low-Voltage Battery.....110

Usage Precautions..... 112

Break-in Period.....112

Trailer Towing*..... 112

Driving Safety Precautions.....113

Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 114

Fuel..... 115

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....116

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....118

Carrying Luggage..... 118

Wading into Water.....120

Fire Prevention.....121

Starting and Driving.....122

Starting the Vehicle..... 122

Driving.....124

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption.... 125

Disus-C*..... 126

Gear Shift Controls.....127

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....128

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....130

Driving Precautions.....131

Driver Assistance..... 134

Driving Assist..... 134

Front Safety Assist.....145

Side Safety Assist.....157

Rear Safety Assist..... 165

Extended Driving Assist Function..... 171

Around View Monitoring (AVM)..... 172

Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 175

Driver Monitoring Systems*..... 175

Tire Pressure Monitoring.....177

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)... 178

Child Presence Detection (CPD)*.....179

Driving Safety Systems.....181

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 188

Infotainment Touchscreen.....188

Infotainment System.....189

Gas Settings..... 189

Google Voice Assistant..... 190

Google Play.....190

Scenario Mode.....191

Gestures and Responses..... 193

Bluetooth call..... 193

OTA Upgrade*..... 194

Intelligent Voice Assistant.....194

KaraOK*..... 194

My Car*.....195

Other Applications..... 195

A/C System..... 196

A/C Panel.....196

A/C Operation Interface..... 197

Function Definition..... 198

A/C Settings..... 202

A/C Vents.....202

BYD App..... 203

About BYD App.....203

Account Registration..... 203
Vehicle Condition and Control.....203
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....204
Storage..... 204
Door Bins..... 204
Glove Box..... 204
Center Console Storage Compartment..... 204
Center Console Cubby.....204
Cup Holders..... 205
Glasses Case..... 206
Seatback Pockets..... 206
Other Devices..... 206
Sun Visor..... 206
Grab Handles..... 206
Second Row Clothes Hooks..... 207
USB Ports..... 207
On-board Power Supply.....208
Wireless Phone Charger..... 208
Cargo Cover..... 210

Service and Maintenance

Maintenance Information.....214
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....214
Regular Maintenance..... 219
Regular Maintenance..... 219
Corrosion Prevention.....220
Paint Maintenance Tips.....221
Exterior Cleaning..... 221
Interior Cleaning.....223
Self-Maintenance.....225
Self-Maintenance..... 225
Sunroof Maintenance.....228
Vehicle Storage.....228
Hood..... 229
Engine Maintenance.....229
Fuel filter.....230
Cooling System.....230
Braking System.....231
Washer system.....231
A/C System.....232
Wiper Blades.....232
Tires..... 233
Fuses..... 236

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 240
Reflective vest.....240
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....240
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs..... 240
If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on... 240
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....241
If the Engine is Overheated.....241
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....242
If a Tire Goes Flat.....244

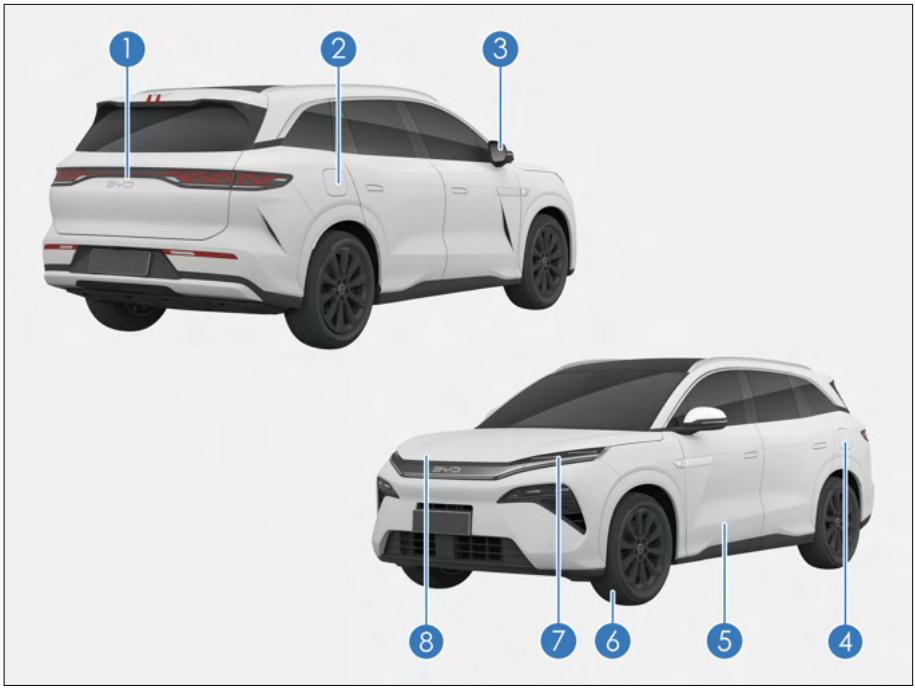
Technical Data

Data..... 250
Vehicle Data..... 250
Information.....255
Vehicle Identification..... 255
Warning Labels.....256
Transponder Mounting..... 258
Declarations of Conformity..... 258
Declarations of Conformity.....258

Abbreviations

Abbreviations..... 267

Illustration Index



1 Trunk ***P64***

2 Check Before Charging ***P98***

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable* ***P98***

Using AC Charging Piles* ***P100***

Using DC Charging Piles* ***P101***

3 Side Mirrors ***P92***

4 Refueling ***P115***

5 Locking/Unlocking Doors ***P61***

6 Tires ***P233***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P244***

7 Lights ***P227***

Light Switches ***P84***

8 Hood ***P229***

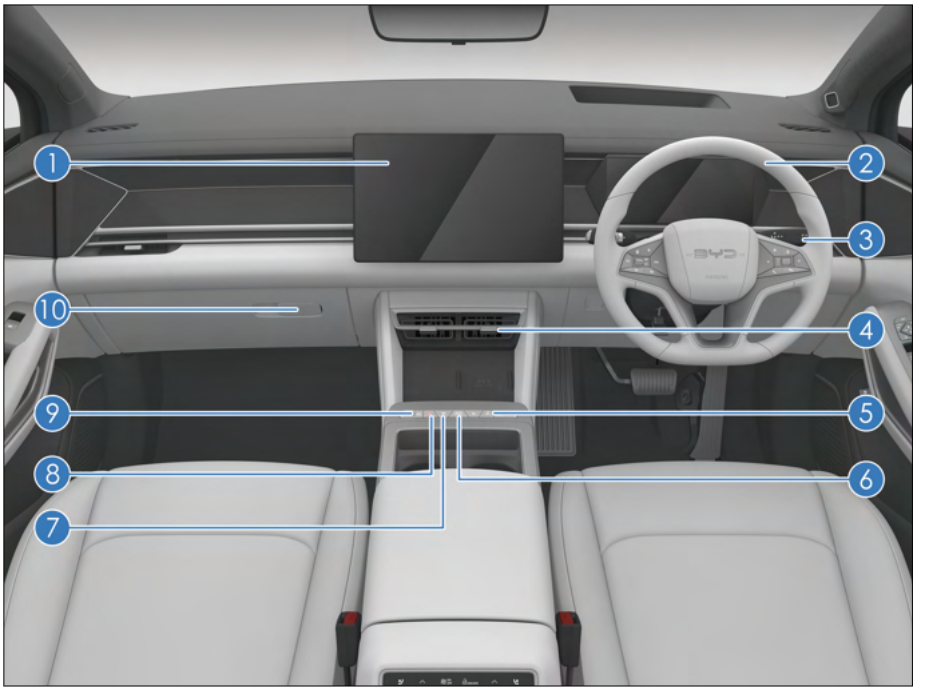
Engine Oil ***P229***

Cooling System ***P230***

Braking System ***P231***

Windshield Washer ***P231***

Dashboard



1 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P188***

2 Steering Wheel Switches ***P79***

3 Gear Shift Controls ***P127***

4 Front Vents ***P202***

5 Front A/C Panel ***P196***

6 START/STOP Button ***P122***

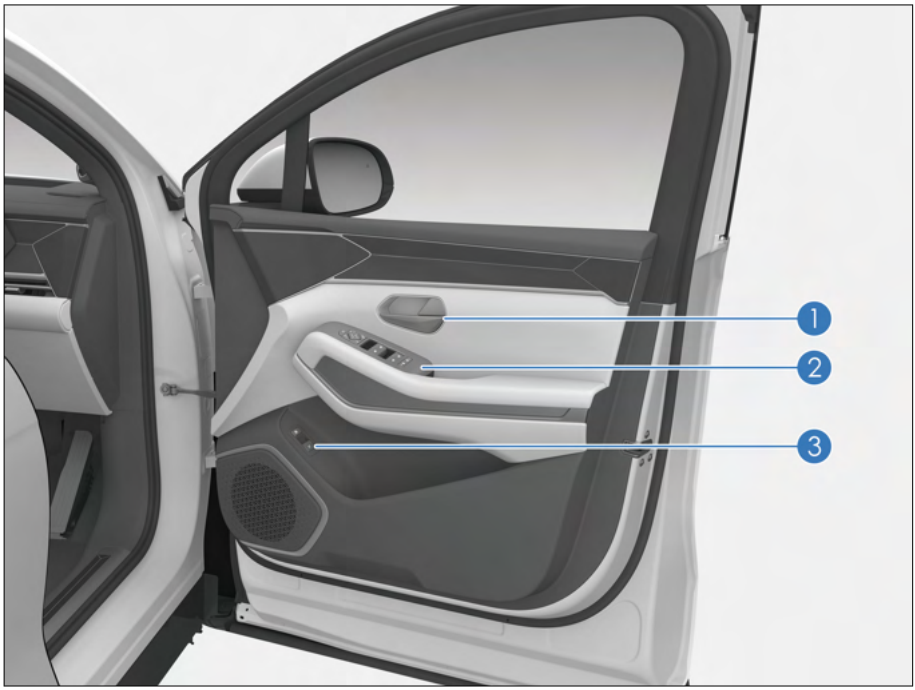
7 AVH Button ***P130***

8 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P87***

9 Dual-Mode System Working Mode ***P35***

10 Glove Box ***P204***

Doors

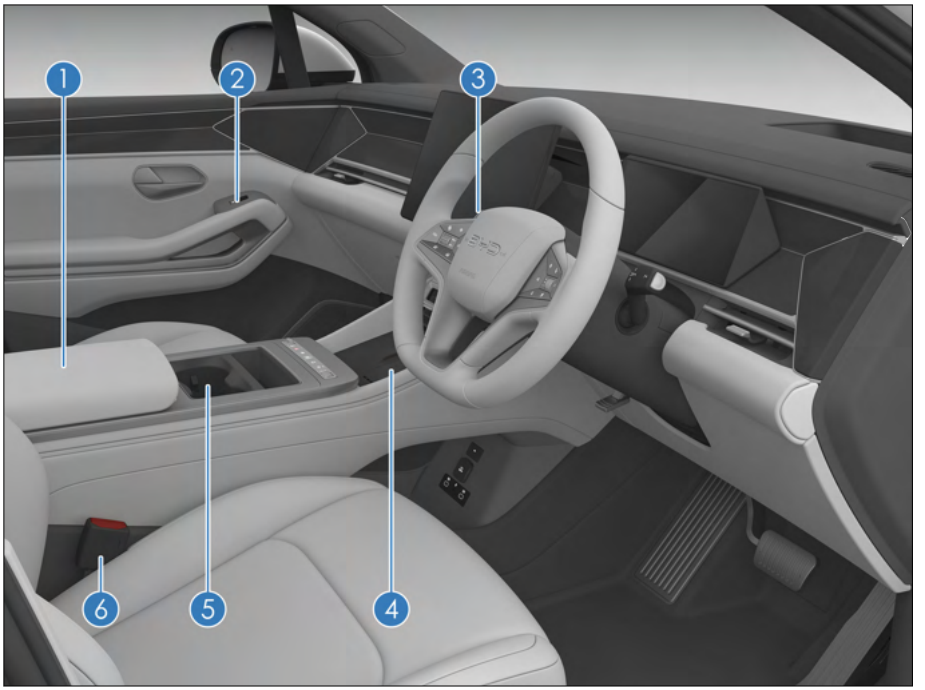


1 Interior Door Handle ***P61***

2 Power Window Switches ***P86***

3 Locking/Unlocking the Trunk* ***P64***

Interior



1 Center Console Cubby ***P204***

2 Passengers' Window Switches ***P87***

3 Steering Wheel ***P79***

4 Wireless Phone Charger ***P208***

5 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P205***

6 Using Seat Belts***P12***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint System..... 21
Dual-Mode System Working Mode...32
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 38
Data Collection and Processing..... 39

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size (see ***P12***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasized that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack to pull out the seat belt.

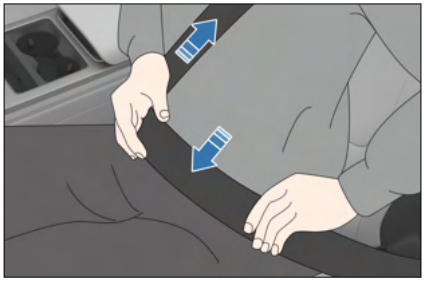
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

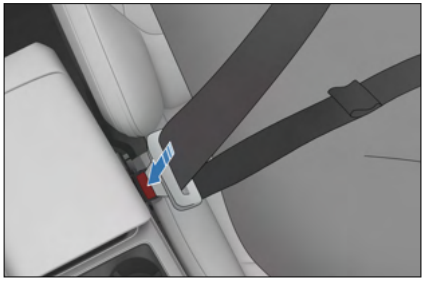
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (See ***P70***).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



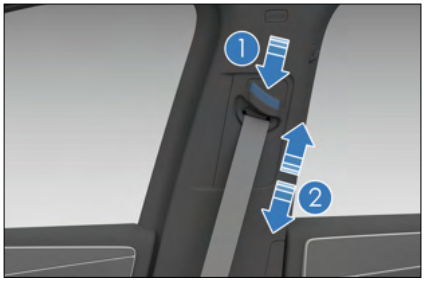
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



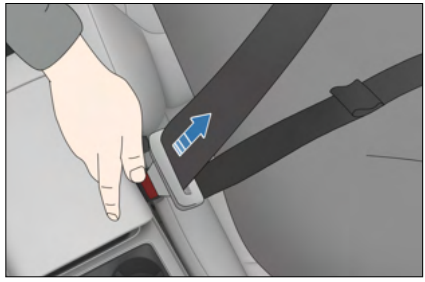
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident, and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt

WARNING

protection performs best when the seatback is upright.

- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly. for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle

WARNING

during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders *

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - Any unfastened seat belt will trigger the indicator to flash.
- Unfastened belt display*
  - The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up when the seat belt is not fastened and the alarm is triggered.
- Unfastened seat belt reminder
  - If any vehicle occupant has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupants.
- When the driver and all the passengers fasten their seat belts, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats* turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of auxiliary restraint system and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the driver and occupants, to reduce likelihood of personal injury or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while side airbags include side airbags, the far side airbag, and curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-DENZA genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury.
- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag module did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for airbag testing.

Airbag fault warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

WARNING

- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.

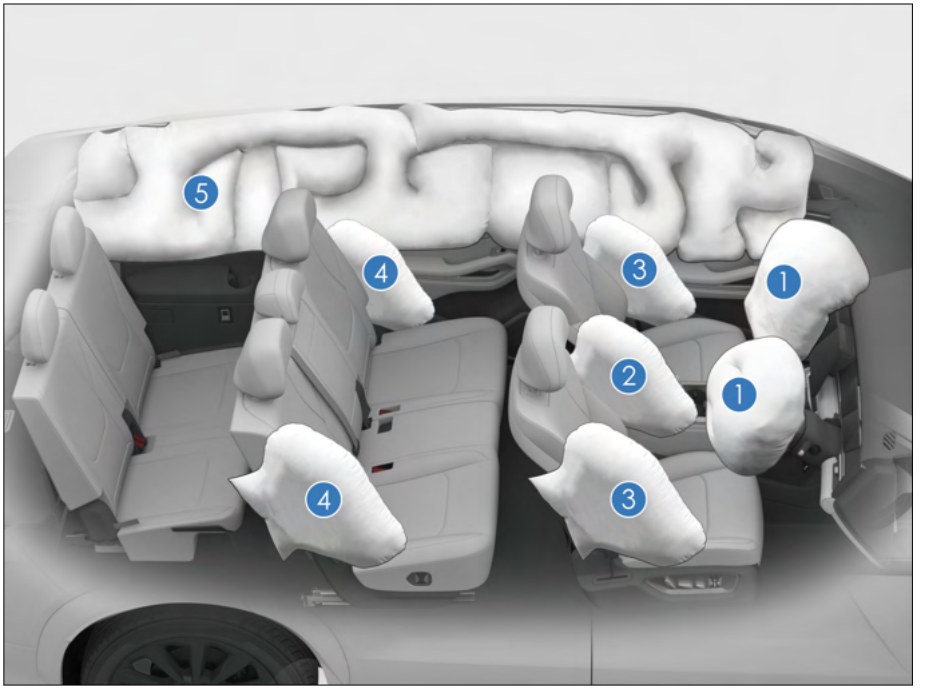
WARNING

- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise,

WARNING

the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



1 Driver and front passenger airbags

2 Front far side airbag

3 Front seat side airbags

4 Second-row seats side airbags

5 Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.

- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.
- The front passenger airbag is controlled by the passenger airbag switch. See ***P87**** for details.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Front Far Side Airbag

The front far side airbag is mounted on the inner side of the driver's seatback and marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- Do not make the seatbacks get wet, the side front far side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent front far side airbag deployment in a collision.
- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimal far side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Seat Side Airbags

The seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable

WARNING

seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment.

- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Side Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with "AIRBAG" on B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbags may only deploy in certain crashes, depending on factors such as crash energy, crash type, impact angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The Electronic Control Unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during a crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

Rollover Protection System

- If the vehicle experiences a side rollover accident that triggers the rollover protection system, the seat side airbags, side curtain airbags, far-side airbag, and seat belt pretensioners will be activated to protect the occupants and mitigate potential injuries.

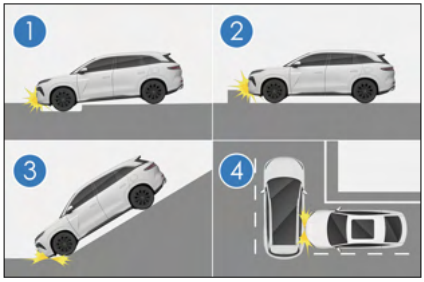
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



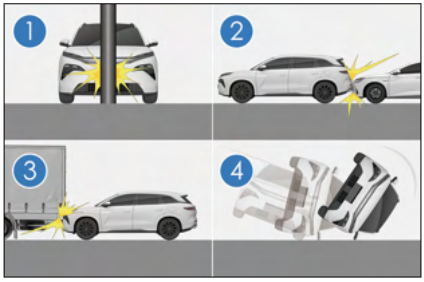
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

③ The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

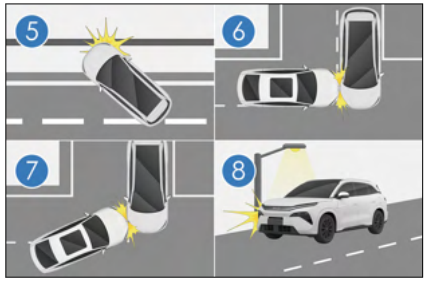


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the button area or the center cap of the steering wheel, the surface of the dashboard at

WARNING

and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.

- Children are not to be seated unprotected, nor are they to ride sitting on an adult's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with

WARNING

side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.

- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of domestic common misuses

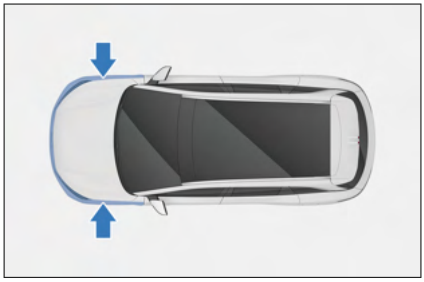
WARNING

and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.

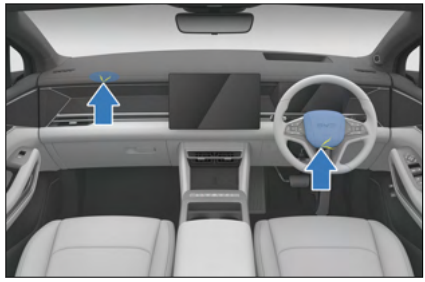
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

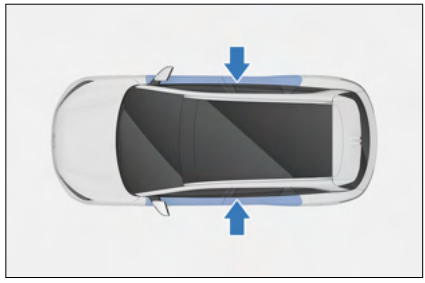
- Any airbag has deployed.
- The airbag fault warning light comes on abnormally on the instrument cluster.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- An impact to a vehicle door in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

Child Restraint System

Child Restraint Systems (Configuration 1)

- Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully

read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature. A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in the rear seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.
- Please correctly fix the child restraint system not used to a seat. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the trunk arbitrarily.

WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windshield or between you and the cabin.
- Vehicles with side curtain airbags: Even though a child is in the child restraint system, do not allow his/her head or any other body part against any door, seat, front/rear pillar or roof side beam (which will be affected when side curtain airbags deploy). Otherwise, the considerable impact force generated when the curtain airbags deploy will cause serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer to make sure the child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle. Otherwise, emergency parking or

WARNING

an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

- Children are not allowed to stand in the car or kneel on the seat when the car is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.
- BYD strongly suggests you to install child restraint systems. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.
- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint must be homologated by ECE R129.

WARNING

- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. Secure the child restraints to the rear seats. Both the second- and the third-row seats are equipped with I-SIZE anchors for child restraints. Make sure to fasten the top tether when installing a child restraint.

- A special anchorage is provided on the second and third row seats (the label showing the anchorage is attached to the seat), and the rods for securing the pull straps are equipped on the seat backs.



Installing Child Restraint System with I-SIZE Rigid Anchor

1. Check the anchorages positions on the second-row outer seats and the third-row seats. When installing the child restraint, it is recommended to adjust the seatbacks to the rearmost position. After installation, adjust again to restore the seatback to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- When using the anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- For a front-facing child restraint, the head support should be removed if it interferes with the fit of the child restraint seatback to the rear seats.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

REMINDER

- The anchorages are installed inside the I-SIZE cargo cover at the bottom of the seat backrest. When you need to use the anchorages, lift up the I-SIZE cargo cover and use its supports inside to secure.

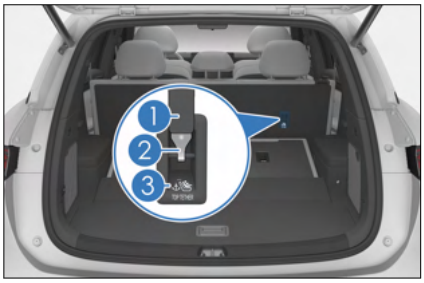
2. Fasten the snap hook of the top tether strap to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secure.

- Second-row seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support

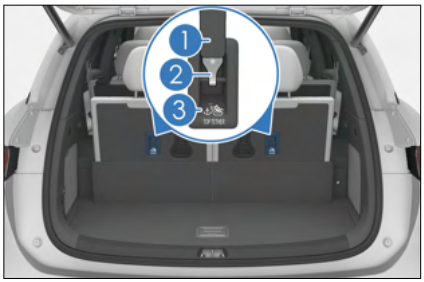


- Thir-row seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



3. Install and adjust the head support to a proper position.

REMINDER

- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the child restraint, install it on the seat behind the front passenger seat.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is used without a seatback, or the seat is occupied by an adult, never remove the head support from the vehicle, and adjust it to the required height position.
- When the top tether is used on a outboard rear seat, route it at the outside of each head post.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Seat belt and i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle

Type	Seating Position						
	1[a)]	2	3 [b)]	4 [b)]	5 [b)]	6 [b)]	7[b)]
Seating position suitable for universal belt	×	×	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for i-Size	×	×	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Largest suitable lateral child restraint system	×	×	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward child restraint system	×	×	R1/R2X/R 2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R 2/R3	No	No
Largest suitable forward child restraint system	×	×	F2X/F2/F 3	No	F2X/F2/F 3	F2X/F2/F 3	F2X/F2/F 3
Suitable for booster seat	×	×	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3
Suitable for support leg	×	×	Yes	No	Yes	No	No

[a)] The front seat must be positioned fully rearward and fully down. The front seat belt upper anchorage should be adjusted to be fully down. If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the front seatback, the front seatback can be adjusted vertically and/or the head support adjusted or removed.

Type	Seating Position						
	1[a)]	2	3[b)]	4[b)]	5[b)]	6[b)]	7[b)]

[b)] If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the rear seatback, the head support can be adjusted or removed. In addition, if there is insufficient space from the seat in front, the front seat can be adjusted forward.

×: seat position not suitable for securing a child restraint system.

① Front passenger seat

② Driver seat

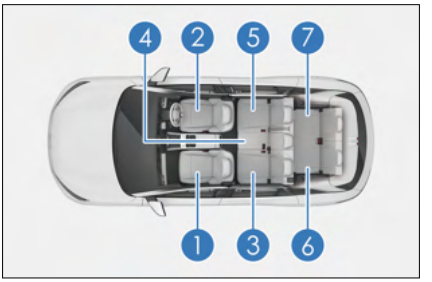
③ Second-row left seat

④ Second-row center seat

⑤ Second-row right seat

⑥ Third-row left seat

⑦ Third-row right seat



Recommended child restraint systems:

Grouping of child stature according to ECE R129 standard

Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Notes
⩽83	Maxi-Cosl	Pebble 360	Belted
76-105	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX and belted
<135	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size[a)]	ISOFIX and belted
<150	Osann	Junior ISOFIX Gurtifix	Belted

[a)]: Ensure the lap belt is in the SecureGuard, and the diagonal belt is not in the SecureGuard but in the XP-PAD.

Child Restraint Systems (Configuration 2)

- Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.
- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature. A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in the rear seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.
- Please correctly fix the child restraint system not used to a seat. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the trunk arbitrarily.

WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windshield or between you and the cabin.
- Vehicles with side curtain airbags: Even though a child is in the child restraint system, do not allow his/her head or any other body part against any door, seat, front/rear pillar or roof side beam (which will be affected when side curtain airbags deploy). Otherwise, the considerable impact force generated when the curtain airbags deploy will cause serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer to make sure the child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the car or kneel on the seat when the car is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.
- BYD strongly suggests you to install child restraint systems. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.
- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.

WARNING

- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint must be homologated by ECE R129.

Front passenger airbag switch

- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open. See ***P87*** for details.

WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. Secure the child restraints to the rear seats. The front passenger, second and the third-row seats are equipped with I-SIZE anchors for child restraints. Make sure to fasten the top tether when installing a child restraint.

- A special anchorage is provided on the front passenger, second and third-row seats (the label showing the anchorage is attached to the seat), and the anchorages for securing the pull straps are equipped on the seatbacks.



Installing Child Restraint System with I-SIZE Rigid Anchor

1. Check the anchorages positions on the font passenger, second-row outer seats and the third-row seats. When installing the child restraint, it is recommended to adjust the seatbacks to the rearmost position. After installation, adjust again to restore the seatback to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- When using the anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident

WARNING

may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

- For a front-facing child restraint, the head support should be removed if it interferes with the fit of the child restraint seatback to the rear seats.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

REMINDER

- The anchorages are installed inside the I-SIZE cargo cover at the bottom of the seat backrest. When you need to use the anchorages, lift up the I-SIZE cargo cover and use its supports inside to secure.

2. Fasten the snap hook of the top tether strap to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secure.

- Front passenger seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support

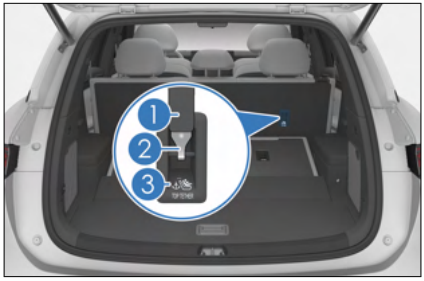


- Second-row seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support

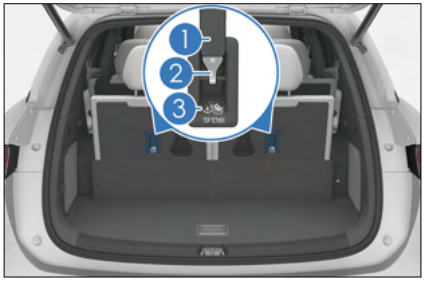


- Thir-row seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



3. Install and adjust the head support to a proper position.

REMINDER

- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the child restraint, install it on the seat behind the front passenger seat.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on the front passenger seat:

- Never use a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated. The airbag must be activated immediately after the rearward-facing child restraint system is dismounted from the front passenger seat.
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the child and vehicle interior.
- If necessary, the front passenger seatback can be adjusted so that it has secure contact with the child restraint system.
- For child restraint systems with the guide fitting of belt attached to the child seat headrest, ensure that the

guide fitting is positioned forward or in line with the seat belt upper anchorage on the vehicle's B-pillar.

- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.
- Ensure that the seat belt passes through or over any guide without kinking or folding of the edges.

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is used without a seatback, or the seat is occupied by an adult, never remove the head support from the vehicle, and adjust it to the required height position.
- When the top tether is used on a outboard rear seat, route it at the outside of each head post.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Seat belt and i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle

Type	Seating Position							
	1		2	3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]	6 [b]	7 [b]
	Front Airbag Activated [a]	Front Airbag Deactivated [a]						
Seating position suitable for universal belt	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	×	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for i-Size	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	×	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Largest suitable lateral child	No	No	×	No	No	No	No	No

Type	Seating Position							
	1		2	3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]	6 [b]	7 [b]
	Front Airbag Activated [a]	Front Airbag Deactivated [a]						
restraint system								
Largest suitable rearward child restraint system	No	R1/R2X/ R2/R3	×	R1/R2X/ R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/ R2/R3	No	No
Largest suitable forward child restraint system	F2X/F2/ F3	F2X/F2/ F3	×	F2X/F2/ F3	No	F2X/F2/ F3	F2X/F2/ F3	F2X/F2/ F3
Suitable for booster seat	B2/B3	B2/B3	×	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3
Suitable for support leg	Yes	Yes	×	Yes	No	Yes	No	No

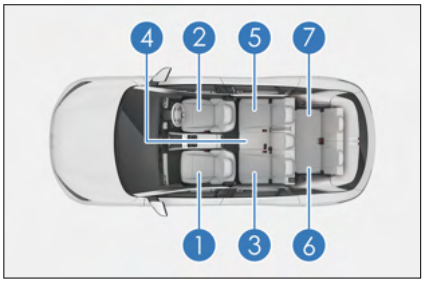
[a] The front seat must be positioned fully rearward and fully down. The front seat belt upper anchorage should be adjusted to be fully down. If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the front seatback, the front seatback can be adjusted vertically and/or the head support adjusted or removed.

[b] If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the rear seatback, the head support can be adjusted or removed. In addition, if there is insufficient space from the seat in front, the front seat can be adjusted forward.

×: seat position not suitable for securing a child restraint system.

① Front passenger seat
② Driver seat
③ Second-row left seat
④ Second-row center seat
⑤ Second-row right seat
⑥ Third-row left seat

⑦ Third-row right seat



Recommended child restraint systems:

Grouping of child stature according to ECE R129 standard

Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Notes
⩽105	Joie	i-Spin 360	ISOFIX
105-125	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size [a)]	ISOFIX and belted
125-150	Chicco	Quasar Fix i-size	ISOFIX and belted

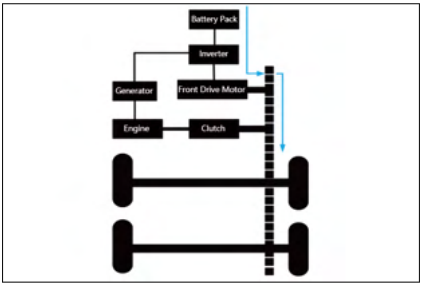
[a)]: Ensure the lap belt is in the SecureGuard, and the diagonal belt is not in the SecureGuard but in the XP-PAD.

Dual-Mode System Working Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

"EV"—pure electric mode:

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

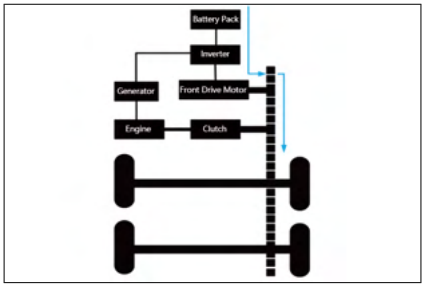


REMINDER

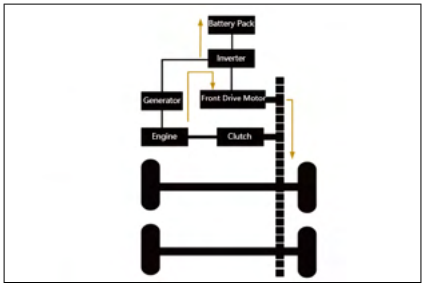
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is recommended to choose HEV mode in too high or too low temperatures.

"HEV"—Dual-mode:

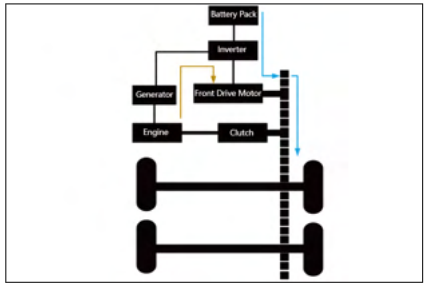
- In HEV mode, when high SOC or low power is required, the engine does not start and the vehicle prioritizes EV mode.



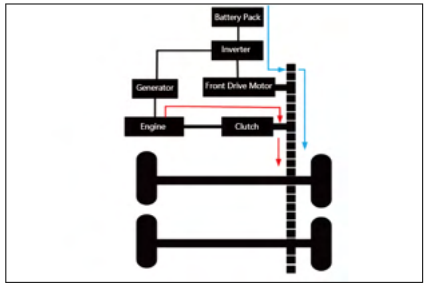
- In HEV mode, when low SOC or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series for better dynamic.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



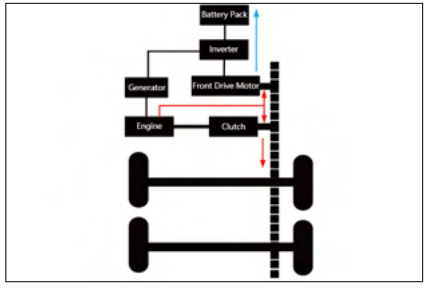
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges for drive motor working.



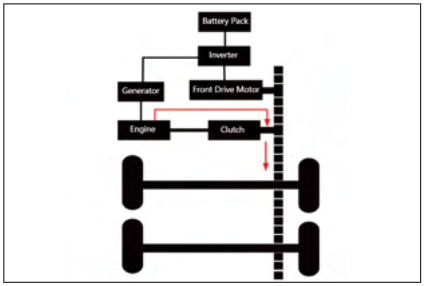
- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is traveling at medium or high speeds, the engine starts to operate in parallel under some working conditions to improve fuel economy:
  - In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.

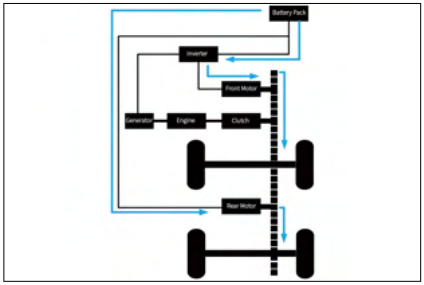


  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

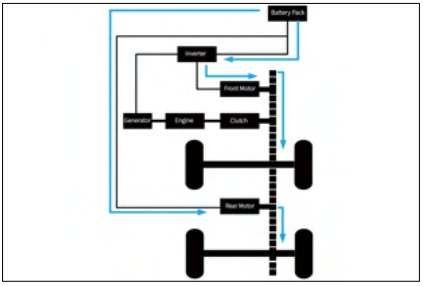


REMINDER

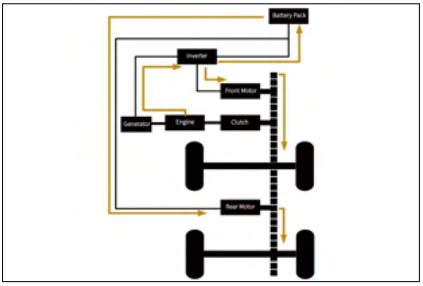
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual-Mode

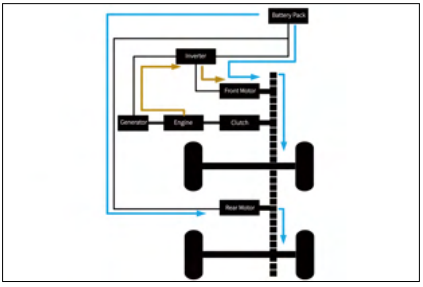
- In HEV mode, when high SOC or low power is required, the engine does not start and the vehicle prioritizes EV mode.



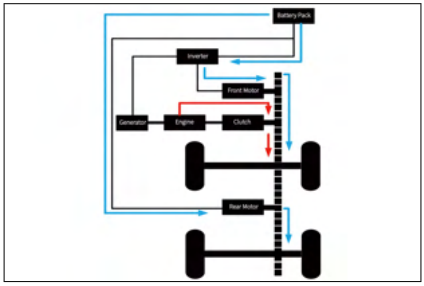
- In HEV mode, when low SOC or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series for better dynamic.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



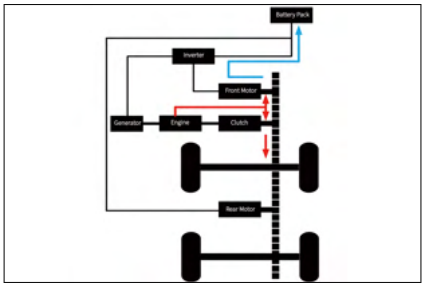
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges for drive motor working.



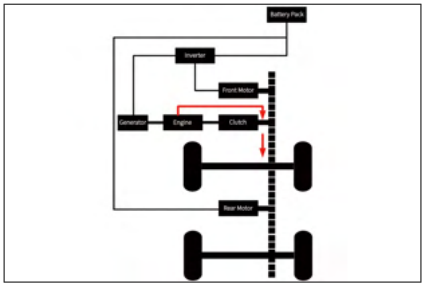
- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is traveling at medium or high speeds, the engine starts to operate in parallel under some working conditions to improve fuel economy:
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.



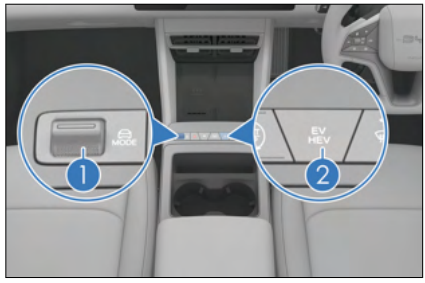
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System

① Mode

② "EV/HEV" mode button



EV-Economic mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-Comfort mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "COMFORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in COMFORT mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in

SPORT mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-Economic mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-Comfort mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "COMFORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in COMFORT mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamics.

Snow mode

- Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the snow mode indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in this mode. This mode is suitable for slippery roads like snow.

Sand mode*

- Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the Sand mode indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in this mode. This mode is suitable for sandy roads.

Mud mode*

- Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the Muddy mode indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in this mode. This mode is suitable for slippery roads like mud.

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System

The vehicle operates under the combination of fuel and electricity. Pay special attention to the followings:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle will limit the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - If the temperature is lower than -30 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be charged.
  - If the temperature is lower than -35 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be discharged.
  - It is recommended to use vehicles in an environment above -20 °C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The best operating temperature of the battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery limits

the output power and shortens the purely electric mileage.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even be life-threatening.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached with warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric

WARNING

shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even lifethreatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the State of Charge (SOC) is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. If the hand-held shift lever is placed in the "N", "R" or "D" gear for too long, it will falsely report that the gear is stuck. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle, because

WARNING

when the OK indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can move slowly in idle (because the motor drives it).

- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle will travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal if the shift lever is placed in the "R" or "D" gear, so please pay attention.

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the vehicle is being handled because of the use of a sealed hybrid low-voltage battery, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

1 -4 Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System - Warning 2

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Depress the brake pedal, press the "P" button, and check that the gear is successfully switched and EPB is engaged.
  - Stop the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please select the four-wheel off-ground towing. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 8 seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or trunk with a valid smart key/phone app.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Using a valid NFC key to unlock the door.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Pressing the "START/STOP" button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.
  - Turning on the A/C system with a valid phone App.

WARNING

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system: infotainment touchscreen → Application center → → **System** → **Privacy Policy**.
- This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related

systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.

- The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote supporting svrvices

- The vehicle has remote surporting services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD in-vehicle third party application collects data by themselves (from the use of third-party content, in particular as part of an online service).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- This is because some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed, which is done by cameras detecting objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is being scrapped or transferred, reset the vehicle system to factory settings to protect your personal privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- Tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- You can also disable Wi-Fi in infotainment touchscreen → Application center  → System  Network & internet→ Wi-Fi → OFF.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system: infotainment touchscreen → Application center  →  → **System** → **Privacy Policy**.

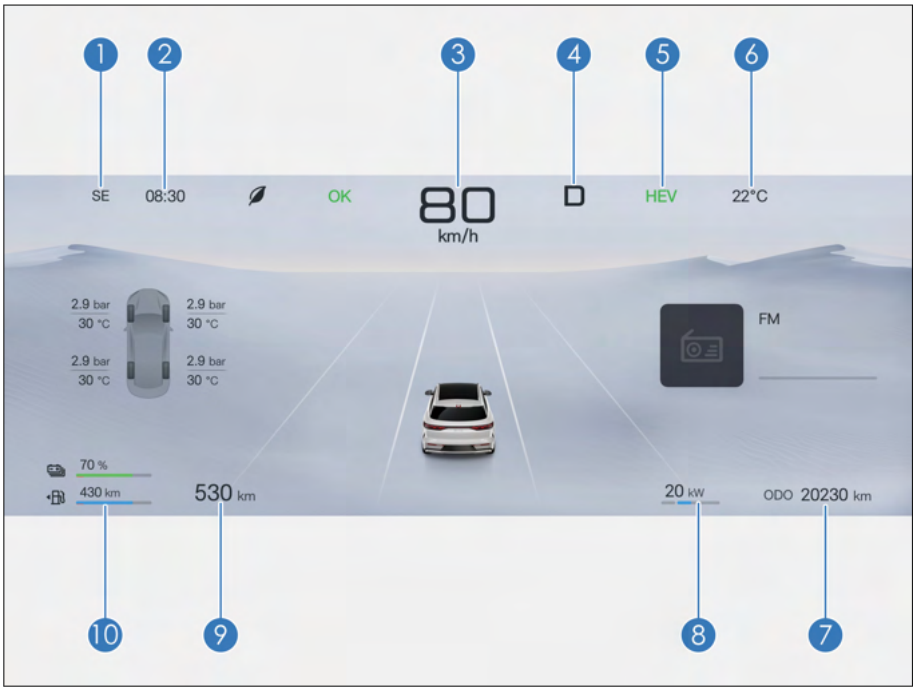
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....44

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1	Direction	6	Vehicle surrounding temperature
2	Time	7	Odometer
3	Speedometer	8	Power meter
4	Gear status	9	Total remaining driving range
5	EV/HEV Mode	10	Fuel Gauge/State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster Settings

- Adjust the instrument brightness, mileage information, and SOC display on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio Display** → **Instrument**.
  - Mileage information can be switched between total mileage, mileage 1, mileage 2, HEV mileage, and EV mileage.
  - The SOC can be set to be displayed as mileage or battery level.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		OK indicator
	HDC indicator		Low beam indicator
	AVH working indicator		GPF regeneration indicator*
	EV indicator		Hev indicator
	BSD activation indicator*		Intelligent Cruise Control status indicator*
	Forced EV indicator		High beam indicator
	LSS indicator*		ACC status indicator*
	Trailer mode indicator*		AFL indicator*
	Mud mode indicator*		Comfort mode indicator
	Economy mode indicator		Sport mode indicator
	Snow mode indicator		Sand mode Indicator*
	AEB indicator*		GPF regeneration fault indicator*
	LSS fault warning light*		Driving power limit warning light

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Oil life monitoring indicator*		Tire pressure fault warning light
	Main alarm indicator		Smart key warning light
	ESC system fault warning light		ESC system off light
	Emission fault warning light		Rear fog light indicator
	Headlight fault warning light		ABS fault warning light
	Fuel Low Indicator		AVAS OFF indicator*
	ACC fault warning light*		DMS fault indicator*
	Function safety failure indicator		AFL fault indicator
	BSD fault warning light*		Powertrain fault warning light
	EPB indicator		TSR indicator*
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Parking brake system fault warning light
	Steering system fault warning light		Airbag fault warning light
	Low oil pressure warning light		Coolant overheating warning light
	Low-voltage power system warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator
	Motor overheating warning light		Headlight fault warning light

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	High-voltage battery fault warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

Exhaust fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even if the performance abnormality cannot be noticed, continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again. Check this warning light when starting the engine. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- If the fault warning light lights up frequently, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.

Low fuel warning light

- This indicator is on the state of fuel gauger. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may be on earlier than usual.

Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when the START/STOP button is pressed, the warning light will light up for a few seconds, a beep will be heard, and a "Key not detected" message will be displayed.
- If you carry the electronic smart key and press the START/STOP button, this warning light will not light up and the vehicle can be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes when the START/STOP button is pressed, it indicates low battery of the key.

ABS fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.

- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the anti-lock braking system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

WARNING

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If any malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on. This means the ABS fails. but the brake can still function as that of an ordinary non-ABS vehicle. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If both the ABS and parking system warning lights go on after the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the braking force distribution system of the front and rear tires has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and braking distance is longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.
- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at the location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value

of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.

- In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC system fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off (self-check not performed within 5s) or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

WARNING

- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the parking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



Electronic stability control off warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then disappears.
- When the ESC OFF function is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF function is turned off, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

WARNING

- While theESC OFF warning light warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, because braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, as the ESC system is switched OFF.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the motor power is limited, this warning light will light up, and

it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

 Main alarm indicator

- If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt on the instrument cluster.

 ACC fault warning light

- When this indicator is solid on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

 BSD fault warning light

- When this indicator is on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

 Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either the driver or the passenger doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.

 Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.

 Parking break system fault warning light

- When the brake fluid level is low and the braking system is faulty, this warning light lights up. If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.
  - This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed). Brief flashing is considered normal.
  - The brake system warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, the braking system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, the ABS does not function during braking, and the vehicle is unstable. Please drive with caution.

WARNING

- When the brake fluid level is low, do not continue driving.

 Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency, or power off the vehicle and turn off the engine. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Coolant overheating indicator

- When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.



Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power supply system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. Turn off the air conditioning, fans, multimedia, etc., and drive to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

 Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

 High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

 High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

 AEB warning light*

- When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.

 TSR indicator*

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

 GPF regeneration indicator*

- When theGasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches a certain amount, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. At this time, try to drive on the highway as much as road conditions allow, and when the particulate matter is cleared, the GPF indicator turns off automatically.

 GPF regeneration fault indicator*

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches its maximum, the fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. At this time, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine for maintenance and a prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster: The engine has been started for maintenance.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended:

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Stop using remote driving for your safety.	Stop using remote driving when it is abnormal.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine accessories function is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system*	The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the headlight	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. Park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check HDC system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....56
Seats.....69
Steering Wheel.....79
Wipers..... 82
Switches.....84
Side Mirrors.....91

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth digital key* and NFC key*.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the left or right front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open the trunk, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Indicator lock button

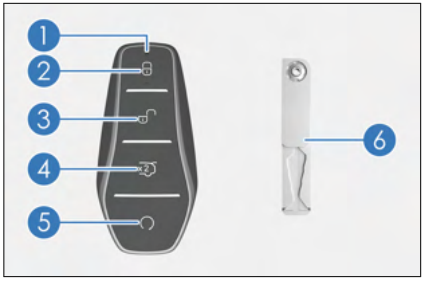
② Lock button

③ Unlock button

④ Trunk release button

⑤ START/STOP button

⑥ Mechanical key



WARNING

Button battery safety alert:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The electronic smart key is an electronic component. The following instructions should be observed to prevent damage to the electronic smart key.
  - Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not tamper with the smart key.
  - Do not hit other objects with the smart key or drop it.
  - Do not inmmerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal, and metal phone back shell) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
  - You can register a spare key for the same car. In this case,

CAUTION

contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Chekc for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The battery of an electronic smart key may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), do not arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- Do not cause harmful interference to legitimate radio communication services when used; once there is interference, stop using and mining immediately.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from interference of all radio services or from radiation of equipments for

CAUTION

industrial, scientific and medical applications.

- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted wtih pacemakers or defibrilators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted wtih pacemakers or defibrilators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave people (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

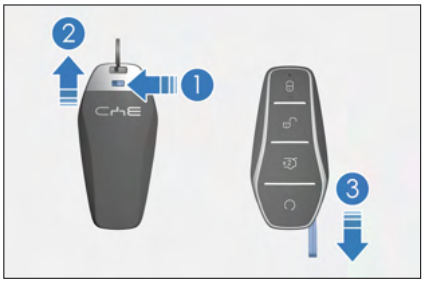
Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. When the key is not used, be sure to insert the mechanical key back into the smart key.

- **Taking out the mechanical key**

When using the mechanical key in the electronic smart key, slide the lock-up button in the direction of arrow ① and push the back cover of the smart key in the direction of arrow ②, invert the smart key 180° and gently shake the smart key.

The mechanical key will then slide out of the key box.



- **Reinstalling the mechanical key**

After using the mechanical key, insert it in the opposite direction of arrow ③ and close the back cover of the smart key. The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

Use the BYD key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.

- Download and install the latest BYD APP in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the APP.
- For vehicles supporting Bluetooth digital key, you can use the key after activating it in the BYD APP.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the APP will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.
- For a better experience, use the key near the driver seat to start the vehicle.

REMINDER

- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration.
- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- Switch on the Bluetooth of your phone before using the key, and contact a authorized dealer or service provider if a problem occurs.

NFC Key Card*

The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize vehicle start.

- Hold your NFC card close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock the vehicle.

- Get into the vehicle, place the card at the NFC sign to authorize the vehicle start.

CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the wireless phone charging area in the vehicle.
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that may block electromagnetic waves, when using the NFC card.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.
  - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1-2 seconds.
- It is recommended to carry the NFC card at all times to avoid situations where you may be unable to use the vehicle due to loss or malfunction of your phone or smart key.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of

CAUTION

the lost card and configuration of a new card.

NFC Digital Key*

NFC digital key is a function provided by BYD for users. You can register mobile phones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock and start the vehicle.

- Before activating the NFC digital key, observe the following conditions:
  - The vehicle has been equipped with BYD Cloud Service.
  - The vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Some mobile phones and wearable devices support BYD NFC digital keys.

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into Park with a valid smart key.

- Via BYD App:
  - Download BYD App in App Store, then register and log in to the app. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported devices), and there are two ways of activation:

- Synchronize data to Apple Watch after the successful activation on iPhone:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.

- Via Watch App:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch,
  - open the Watch app on iPhone, select **Wallet**, find the key, and tap **Add** to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Enable the NFC function of your smartphone or wearable device before using the NFC digital key. Usage:

- To unlock or lock the vehicle, position the NFC antenna area of the smartphone or wearable device near the NFC sign on the driver side mirror. Consult the manufacturer for the NFC antenna area of your device.
- After unlocking the vehicle using the NFC digital key, the vehicle will have keyless start permissions for a certain period of time.

CAUTION

- After authorization with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly, or you need to place the device at the NFC module in the vehicle again to reauthorize.

Removing the NFC digital key

How to remove NFC digital key:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD app, navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to be removed, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet app on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it following the instructions.

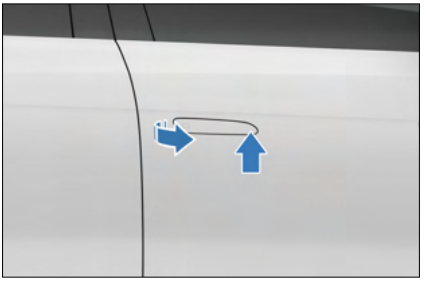
CAUTION

- Some smartphone and wearable device models do not support NFC digital keys.

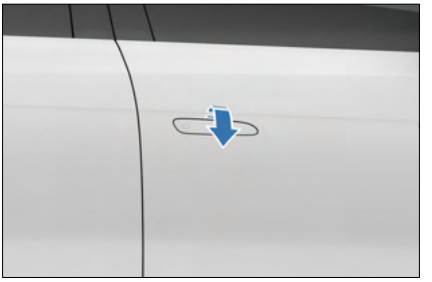
Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

1. Push the right side of a hidden door handle, and turn the left side to get a finger height, holding it by a hand.

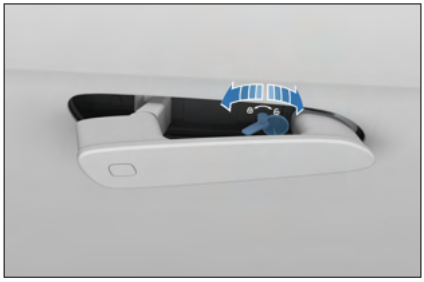


2. Once the left side is extended, pull the middle of the handle outward to extend the handle.



3. Insert the key into the lock hole and turn it.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.

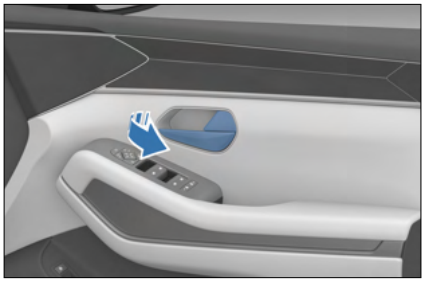


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- As this vehicle is equipped with a child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- When you enter the active area while carrying a registered smart key, press the button on the smart key slowly and firmly to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the hood, and the trunk lid are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If any door is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals

do not flash, the door handles do not retract and the alarm sounds once.

- If any door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button. All doors are unlocked, the hidden door handles automatically extend, and the turn signal flashes twice. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights (auto interior lights are enabled on the infotainment touchscreen) will stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract.
- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in vehicle search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters another vehicle search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions,, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows** (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

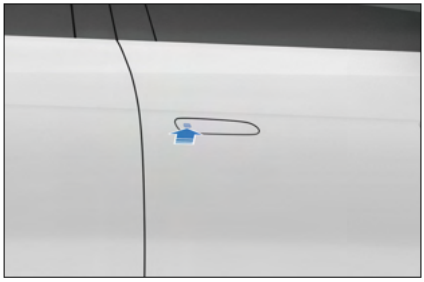
CAUTION

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. When all the doors, the hood, and the trunk lid are closed, the hidden door handles retract automatically. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If any of the door is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the side mirrors will not fold, the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash and the door handles will not retract.
- If hood or the trunk lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.

Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key in the activated area. All doors unlock, the hidden door handles extend automaticcaly and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, Otherwise, all doors will relock automatically and the four door handles retract.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window,

REMINDER

it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- With the ignition off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows.
- To enable or disable this function, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key*

Locking doors:

- When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the effective NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. The turn signals flash once when the vehicle is powered off.



Unlocking doors:

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:

- The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror while a door is being opened or closed.

- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after valid locking.
- For NFC key (smart phone) setup instructions, see ***P59*** for details.

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

Opening/Closing the trunk with smart key

- Double-click the trunk opening button on the smart key, and the turn signals will flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the lid.

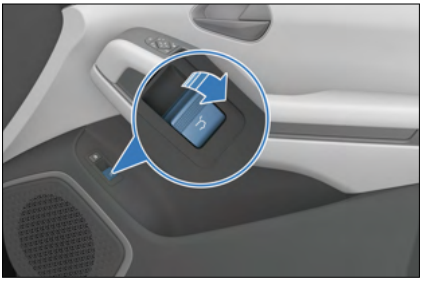


REMINDER

- If the trunk release button is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

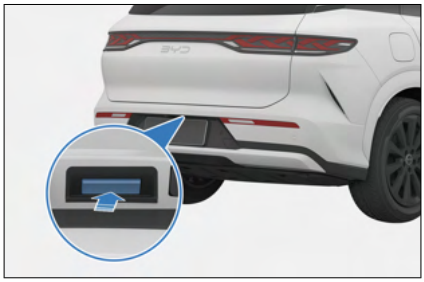
Opening/Closing the trunk from inside the vehicle

- When the trunk lid is closed, pull the switch once, and the lid will automatically unlock and open to the set height (maximum height by default).
- While the trunk lid is opening, pull this switch again to freeze it in place.
- With the vehicle powered on and the trunk open, pull this switch for more than one second to automatically close the trunk. Release the switch to freeze the closing motion.



Opening the trunk with exterior switch

- With the vehicle unlocked, press the exterior trunk switch to open the trunk.
- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle with the smart key and press the exterior switch to open the trunk.

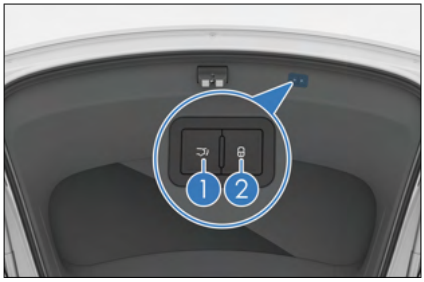


REMINDER

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

①Trunk lid close button*

- When the trunk lid is open and stationary, press this button to close the lid.
- Press this button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. Press this button again to have the lid move in the opposite direction.



② Vehicle lock button*

- When the ignition is off and the trunk is open, pressing the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key closes the trunk, locks the entire vehicle, and arms the anti-theft alarm system.

CAUTION

- Before closing the trunk electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Setting the trunk lid opening height*

- Open the trunk manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior trunk button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is successfully set to the current position.
- Set the trunk opening height by going to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Locks** → **Doors**.

Anti-pinch function

- The trunk will open or stop moving if it contacts any obstacle while closing or opening.

When the trunk fails to act automatically

- Manually and completely close the trunk for recovery.

When reconnecting the low-voltage battery

- Close the trunk manually to ensure the power trunk lid functions normally.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.

WARNING

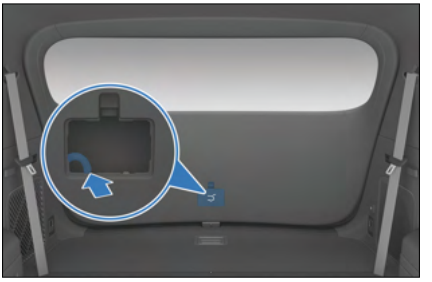
- Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
- Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
- Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
- Make sure the trunk is properly closed before driving the vehicle.
- Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the trunk, otherwise the lid may close again.
- Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the trunk is fully closed.
- The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be especially careful about hand and fingers.

WARNING

- Do not allow a child to operate the power trunk lid.

Trunk Lid Emergency Unlocking

- There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the trunk lock. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the trunk in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See ***P66***.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

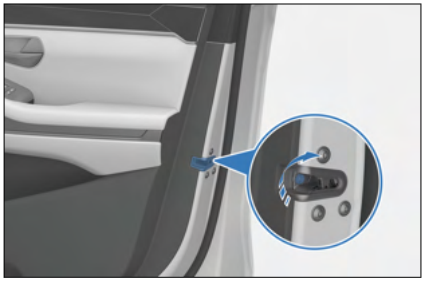
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open all doors other than the driver's door and turn the slider with the mechanical key clockwise as shown until it is in the locking position. You can then lock the doors by closing the them.



3. Open the driver's door after locking other doors. Lift and hold the driver's door handle and pull it to its maximum angle.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out (see ***P60***).
5. Release the handle and close the driver's door.
6. Check whether all doors are securely locked.

Unlocking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Lift and hold the door handle and pull it to its maximum angle.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
4. Release the door handle and pull it again to open the driver's door.
5. Unlocking all doors other than the driver's door: In the vehicle, pull the interior handle twice to unlock the corresponding door.

REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the valid smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (See ***P61*** and ***P62*** for details).

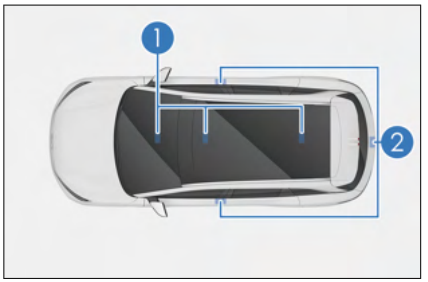
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (See ***P122***).

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna

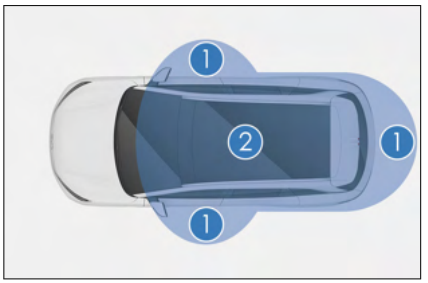


Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered key fob is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.



If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a two-way radio, mobile phone or other communication devices.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, use the mechanical key in the smart key to lock/unlock the driver's door, or lock/

unlock all doors with the wireless remote control function.

- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - Smart key failure. If the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster lights up, and the instrument cluster displays the message "Smart key power is low. Please replace the battery as soon as possible", the battery of the key may be exhausted.
  - The vehicle is started repeatedly in a short time. Please wait for 10 seconds and start the vehicle again.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The key fob communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the key fob in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamp

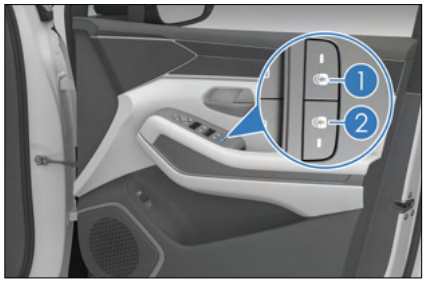
Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

① Child protection lock for the right door

② Child protection lock for the left door

Press the left/right child protection lock button to disable the left/right rear window switch and the interior door handles. To open the door, use the exterior handle.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seats

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard

controls are within the driver's easy control.

- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Rear seats cannot be folded in with the vehicle running.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push up the seat position adjustment lever, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or during emergency braking.

WARNING

- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, you and your passengers could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injury to the neck or other parts; or you and your passenger may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.

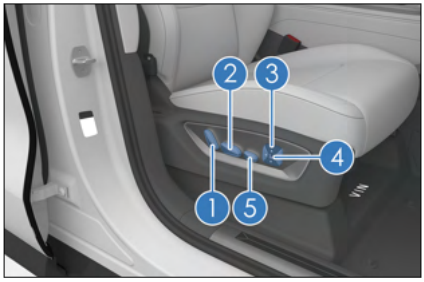
CAUTION

- When folding seats, make sure no seat belt is damaged.
- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.
- While adjusting a seat, do not let it hit against any passenger or the luggage.

Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power

Front seat adjustment includes position adjustment, seatback angle adjustment, lumbar support adjustment*, massage adjustment*, and leg support adjustment*. The front passenger's seat does not support cushion angle adjustment. Choose the following adjustments according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.



① Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Move this switch forward or backward to adjust the seatback angle.

② seat position adjustment

- Seat position adjustment includes forward/backward adjustment, cushion angle adjustment*, and height adjustment*.
  - Toggle the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
  - Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle.
  - Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat.

③ Lumbar support adjustment*

- Press the front, rear, upper, or lower part of the switch to adjust the lumbar support.

④ Seat massage switch*

- The massage button is at the center of the lumbar support adjustment button. Press it to start or stop massage. You can also enable or disable the massage function on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Massage cannot be used with lumbar support activated. When the massage is activated, the direction buttons work for massage adjustment; otherwise, they work for lumbar support adjustment. When using the massage function, press any key of the direction key for more than 2 seconds, and the massage function will end.
- In massage mode, the up and down buttons can be used to switch massage patterns, and the left and right buttons to adjust the massage intensity. Switching massage patterns does not alter massage intensity.
- Your last massage pattern and intensity choices are remembered.
- The massage mode sequence is "Wave(default set) → Pulse → Stretch → Relax → Soothing → Wave". Press the "Up" button to switch according to the massage sequence, and press the "Down" button to switch in reverse order. The massage mode can be switched circularly.
- The massage comes in three intensity levels: Low, Medium (default) and High. Press the left or right button to switch to High or Low. These levels do not circulate.
- The massage mode automatically ends 15 minutes after the last adjustment. To continue, simply press the seat massage button or activate the massage via the infotainment touchscreen.

⑤ Leg support adjustment*

- Toggle the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

CAUTION

- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Front Passenger Seat Adjustment by Seond-Row Passengers

①Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline front passenger’ s seatback.

②Seat position adjustment

- Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.



Front seat bed mode*

- This vehicle is equipped with a front seat bed mode. Before using this feature, ensure that the front seat headrests have been removed.
- The expansion method for the Bed Mode is as follows:

  1. Remove the headrests from the front seats;
  2. Adjust the front seat position to the most forward position, then adjust the second-row seat position to the most rearward position;
  3. Adjust the front seat height to the maximum and recline the backrest to connect and flatten with the second-row seat.

WARNING

- Ensure that no one is sitting in the front seats, second-row seats, and third-row seats before using the front seat bed mode.
- While the vehicle is in motion, to ensure the safety of the occupants, please do not use the bed mode and do not excessively recline the seat backs. Otherwise, even if the seat belts are fastened, they may not provide the expected protection.

Memory System*

Memory switch position

- On the infotainment touchscreen, you can set two seat positions to be memorized in → **Seats**.

Memory setting conditions

- The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
- The driver's and front passenger's seats and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
- No operation is made on the front seats and side mirrors.

Memory setting method

- Press and hold any memory switch on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the driver's and the front passenger's seats and side mirrors will be recorded, and the memory setting finishes.

REMINDER

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been set, the position set will be overwritten.

Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- When the vehicle is in Park, the driver's and front passenger's seat memory systems and side mirrors will perform memory recall when the memory system switch is tapped if the following conditions are met:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
  - No operation is made on the front seats and side mirrors.
- You can interrupt the current memory recall operation by the following methods:
  - Press or toggle any adjustment switch of the front seats.
  - Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.

WARNING

- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Easy entry/exit for driver's seat

- Automatic backward:
  - This feature enables the seat (if located in the front section of its full travel) to automatically move back for a certain distance after the driver unlocks the vehicle with the smart key and opens the driver's door. This makes it easy for the driver to enter.
  - For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door is opened.
- Automatic forward:
  - When the vehicle power is switched from "STOP" to "START" and the driver's door is closed, the seat will automatically move forward to the position before the last power-off if no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered upon the last power-off.
  - If no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered for easy exiting, the seat will automatically move forward after the driver's door is closed.
- Settings
  - Users can open or close the automatic driver seat function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**→**Adaptive Welcome Lighting**.
  - The automatic driver seat function can be interrupted by closing the driver's door while the seat is moving

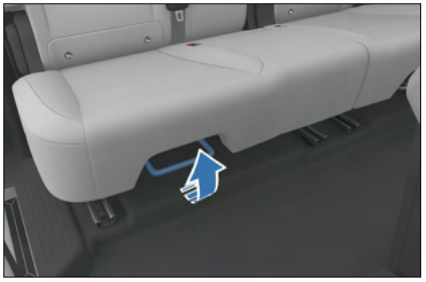
backward or by opening the driver's door while the seat is moving forward.

Second Row Seats

- Second-row seat adjustment includes seatback angle adjustment, forward/backward adjustment, and massage adjustment*. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

Seat forward/backward adjustment

- To move forward or backward, hold and pull up the adjustment lever, slide to the desired position, and then release.
- After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place (for example, a locking sound is heard) by attempting to push it forward and backward.



Seatback angle adjustment

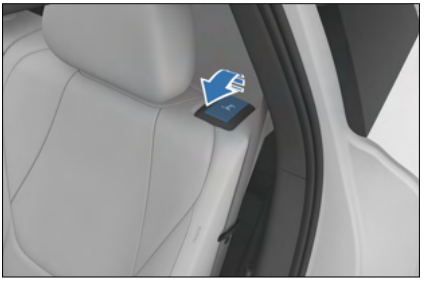
- Lift the seatback adjustment handle. Lean against the seatback and tilt it forward or backward to the desired position, then release the handle.



Accessing the third-row seats*

- Enable the Easy Entry function when the third-row passengers needs to get on/off the vehicle. Operation steps:

1. Pull up the Easy Entry lever of the left seatback, and the seatback will tilt forward by a certain angle. Without releasing the lever, continue tilting the seatback until the seat is lifted fully.
2. Release the lever and push the seat forward until you hear a "click" sound indicating the seat has engaged the Easy Entry mode. The third-row passenger can get on/off easily at this time.



Reset the second-row seats from the Easy Entry position

- After the third-row passenger getting on/off the vehicle, the second-row seat's Easy Entry function needs to be reset. Operation steps:
  - When resetting the Easy Entry seat, there is no need to manually pull the unlock lever.

- Push the seat backward until it slides and tilts into the locking position, with the locking click sound of the seatback and seat cushion.



WARNING

- After entering the third-row seat area, passengers shall pay attention to the anti-strike marking on the second-row seats and avoid placing feet in the warning area to prevent injury during the Easy Entry reset.

CAUTION

- The front passenger seat position adjustment may result in insufficient space for the Easy Entry feature to fully activate or reset. To resolve this, adjust the front passenger seat to a central or forward position to ensure proper operation.
- During activation of Easy Entry feature, do not shake or push the second-row seatback backward.
- If the second-row seat cannot be pushed backward to reset the Easy Entry feature, re-activate the Easy Entry feature, push the seat forward until you hear the "click" locking sound, and then proceed with the reset operation.

CAUTION

- When using the Easy Entry feature, avoid forcefully sliding or impacting the seat to prevent damage to the seat and its unlocking mechanism.

Second-row seat massage adjustment switch*

- The second-row massage switch is at the center of the second-row lumbar support adjustment button. Press it to start or stop massage. You can also enable or disable the massage function on the infotainment touchscreen.



- When the massage function is activated, adjusting the direction key will adjust the massage function.When using the massage function, press any key of the direction key for more than 2 seconds, and the massage function will end.
- In massage mode, the upper and lower buttons can be used to switch massage patterns, and the left and right buttons to adjust the massage intensity. Switching massage patterns does not alter massage intensity.
- Your last massage pattern and intensity choices are remembered.
- The massage mode sequence is "Wave (default set) → Pulse → Stretch → Relax → Soothing → Wave". Press the

upper button to switch according to the massage sequence, and press the lower button to switch in reverse order. The massage mode can be switched circularly.

- The massage comes in three intensity levels: Low, Medium (default) and High. Press the left or right button to switch to High or Low. These levels do not circulate.
- If no further operation is performed after the last adjustment, the massage mode will automatically stop the after 15 minutes. To continue, simply press the seat massage button or activate the massage via the infotainment touchscreen.

Seat Heating and Ventilation System

- This vehicle is equipped with ventilation and heating functions for both the front seats* and the second-row seats*.
- Enable or disable seat ventilation and heating by sliding down the shortcut screen from the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen or by going to the infotainment touchscreen →  .
- Users can also turn on or off the second-row seat ventilation and heating through the rear A/C control panel.

Heating adjustment*

- Seat heating: Users can adjust the three heating levels by operating the seat heating switch on the infotainment touchscreen or the A/C control panel.
  - The heating indicator is off by default after each power-on.
  - Press the switch first. The seat heater works in the high-temperature mode, and the three heating indicators light up at the same time.
  - Press the switch for the second time after it returns to the original position. The seat heater works in the low-temperature mode, two indicator light up, and one indicator goes out.
  - Press the switch for the third time after it returns to the original position. The seat heater works in the low-temperature mode, one indicator lights up, and two indicator go out.
  - Press the switch for the fourth time after it returns to the original position. The heating is deactivated, and three indicators all go out.

Ventilation adjustment *

- Seat ventilation: Users can adjust the three fan speed levels by operating the seat heating switch on the infotainment touchscreen or the A/C control panel.
  - The ventilation indicator is off by default after each power-on.
  - Press the switch first. The ventilation fan works at a high speed, and three ventilation indicators light up.
  - Press the switch for the second time after it returns to the original position. The seat ventilation works in the low-temperature mode, two indicator light up, and one indicator goes out.
  - Press the switch for the third time after it returns to the original position. The seat ventila works in the low-speed mode, one indicator lights up, and two indicator go out.
  - Press the switch for the fourth time after it returns to the

original position. The ventilation is deactivated, and three indicators all go out.

Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on at the same time.

- Tap the heating icon to make the heater work; if the ventilation function is then enabled, the heater will stop working and the fan will start to work.
- Tap the ventilation icon to make the fan work; if the heating function is then enabled, the fan will stop working and the heater will start to work.

Third-Row Seats

- Flipping and lowering the seatback:
  - Pull the cord to straighten the seatback.
  - To recline the seat back, pull the seat back pull cord. Once the cord is released, the seat back will automatically fold down. You can fold the seatback forward until the back touches the cushion, or you can fold it backward until reaching the locking position (with a locking click).



WARNING

- Before adjusting the rear seats, ensure the luggage anchors on both sides of the trunk are reset to prevent damage to the anchors.

WARNING

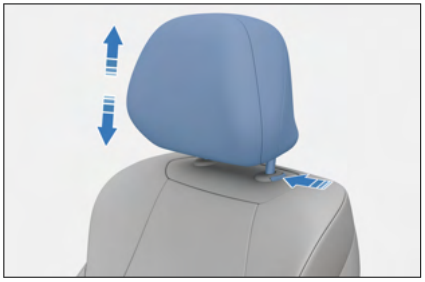
- Pay attention to the followings when folding the seats:
  - Do not put the seatback down with the vehicle running.
  - Do not fold the seats with the vehicle running.
  - Occupants should be careful when accessing the third-row seats.
  - Make sure the second-row seats are fully locked before driving.
- The seatback adjustment handle and folding cord cannot be operated at the same time. Straighten the seatback and reset the cord if there is a mis-operation.

Head Supports

The front seats and second-row seats in this vehicle feature height-adjustable headrests.

Adjusting Head Supports*

- Lifting a head support
  - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly adjust the head support, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



Removing head supports*

- Removing a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.
- Installing a head support
  - Insert the head support levers into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

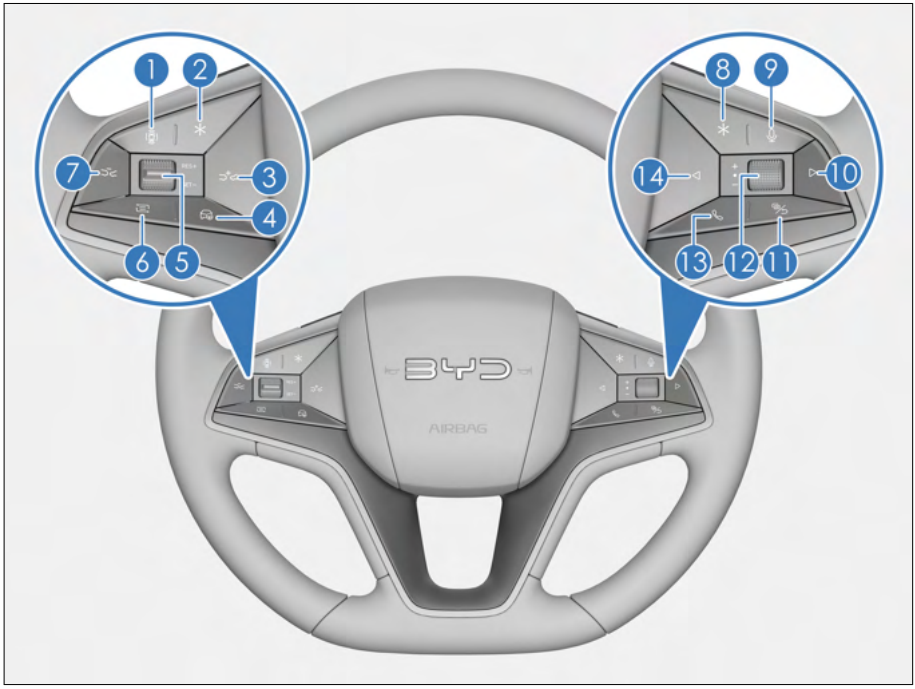
The third-row headrests are foldable, and they will automatically fold when the third-row seats are folded.

REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports. Failing to install or incorrectly installing the headrest can cause serious injury to occupants during emergency braking or accidents.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	AVM	8	Custom
2	Custom	9	Speech recognition
3	Distance +	10	Right
4	Cruise control	11	Instrument cluster/Back
5	Reset/+ or Set/-Paddle	12	Scroll button
6	Driving information	13	Call
7	Distance -	14	Left

Left-hand buttons

Lever

- Reset/+: Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.
- Setup/-: Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Distance -

- Adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and decrease one level. A total of four levels are available.

Cruise control

- If the vehicle is in NOA*/ICC*/ACC* mode, pressing this button will automatically set the cruise target speed to the current road speed limit.

REMINDER

- For instructions on using cruise control, see ***P79***.

Left/Right custom buttons*

- Press for a long time to enter the custom button setting interface to select the custom function button; press for a short time to execute the custom function.

AVM

- Press this button to enable or disable the AVM.

Driving information

- Briefly press to cycle through the driving information interfaces, and press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
- Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
- Press down the button to mute.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◁ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▷ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the dial screen or selecting a record on the call log or contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.

- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the voice recognition screen.
- Press a second time to exit the screen.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When not on the Bluetooth call screen, briefly press the instrument/return button to cycle through the instrument menu settings. Hold the button to enter the confirmation interface.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

REMINDER

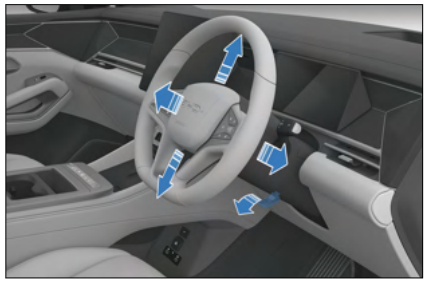
- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- To set the steering mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Driving** → **Driving Control** → **Steering Assist Mode**, and select Comfort or Sport.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering mode can only be changed in normal terrain mode

REMINDER

with LKA off and a vehicle speed lower than 80 km/h.

Steering Wheel Heating*

- Enable or disable steering wheel heating* by the steering wheel heating icon on the infotainment touchscreen → → Vent/Heat.
- You can turn on the steering wheel heating remotely through BYD app to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

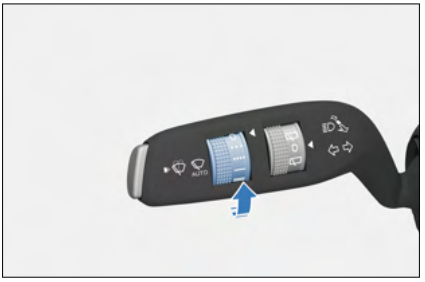
Wipers

Wiper Switch

Windshield Wipers and Washer

Front wiper

- The lever is used to control the front windshield wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - 0 : OFF
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - : Slow
  - : Fast
- To select a mode, slide the control button up or down.
- In slow and fast modes, the wipers operates continuously.



- You can enable Auto wipers on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping the infotainment touchscreen→ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**. Once enabled, the wipers will swipe once and then switch to the auto mode, adjusting based on rain intensity.
- In auto mode, adjusting the wiper button will change the auto wipers level.

WARNING

- If the ignition is on, and the wipers are set to auto mode, touching or wiping the glass on the sensor area may activate the wipers and cause an accident.

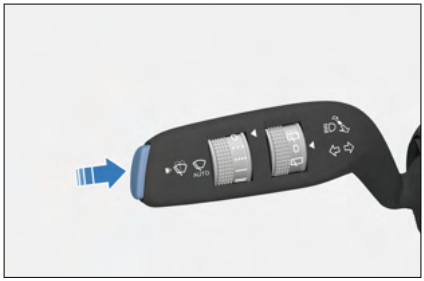
CAUTION

- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction.

CAUTION

After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the control lever to the first position. The wipers wipe at a low speed until the button is released.



Front windshield washer

- To clean the front windshield, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- When the stick is released, or when it is held for over 10 seconds, the washer spray stops, and the wipers stop after operating for 1–2 cycles.

Rear Wiper

- Move the middle roller of the wiper switch to the " " position to put the rear wipers into intermittent mode.
- The rear wiper stops working when the middle roller of the wiper switch is set to the position or when the trunk lid is opened.
- Set the middle roller of the wiper switch to and hold it to activate the rear wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and release it. The wiper will operate 2 to 3 times and stop after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windshield cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.
- Do not operate the washer for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, as those may cause motor overheating or damage.

Replacing Wiper Blades

Replacing Wiper Blades

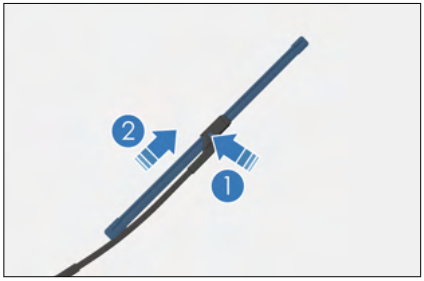
- Inspect front/rear wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the

windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

- With the ignition on, turn on the wiper service function in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper service function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

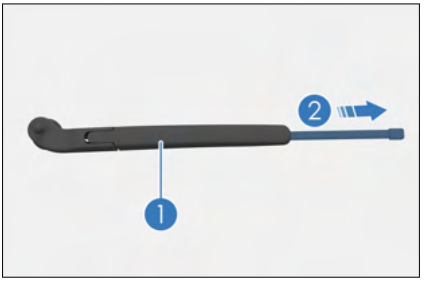
Replacing front wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②.
4. Hold one end of the spray tube on the windshield wiper arm and pull it out from the wiper blade.
5. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing rear wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out along the indicated direction.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



⚠ CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- In rainy and snowy days in winter, it is recommended to go to the overhaul interface to enable front wiper check. Manually lift the front wipers to prevent them from freezing.

For wiper blade maintenance, see ***P233***.

Switches

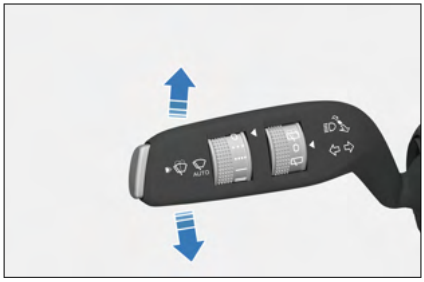
Light Switches

- Auto lights, position lights, low beam lights, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights can be controlled on the infotainment system.
- To turn on or off the auto lights, position lights, low beam lights, rear fog lights, or daytime running lights, or to turn off all lights, go to the

infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light**.

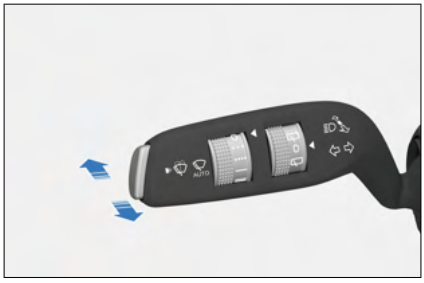
Turn signals

- Push up the switch lever to activate the right turn signal and down to activate the left turn signal.



High beam and flash-to-pass function

- Push forward to turn on the high beams and backward to activate the flash-to-pass function.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located at the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Activation conditions: to activate this function, set the switch lever to position lights and low beam lights and switch off the vehicle power.
- With the function is activated, the headlight, position light, rear fog light and high beam turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the function is activated, the headlights and position lights turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically if the auto light off function is activated. If the driver's door is opened while the power is OFF, the lights will turn off after 10 minutes. If the door is opened and then closed, the lights will turn off after 10 seconds.

Lighting delay

- Headlights after exit:
  - With the light switch set to auto lights, position lights, or low beam lights, when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors, and are leaving the vehicle, the corresponding lights keep on for 10 seconds (or the set time period through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light**).
- Headlights before enter:
  - With the light switch set to auto lights, position lights, or low

beam lights, when you approach and unlock the vehicle, the corresponding lights keep on for 10 seconds (or the set time period through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light**).

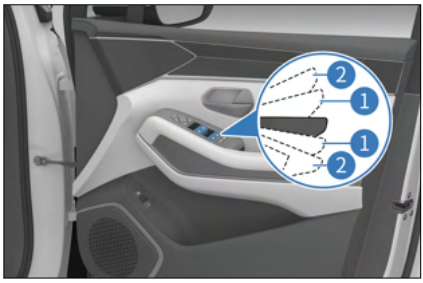
Adjusting headlight height

- To adjust headlight height, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light**.
- Default maximum height is set to 0.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, all the window switches can roll up or down the window.
  - Press the window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up a window switch to roll the window up.
- While using the switch, release it to stop window halfway.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down function

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

When automatic up or anti-pinch function fails

- Follow the steps below to restore the function when automatic up or anti-pinch function fails:
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be recovered.

Delay function

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:

WARNING

- Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
- Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for servicing if the windows' auto up or anti-pinch function fails.

Central Locking

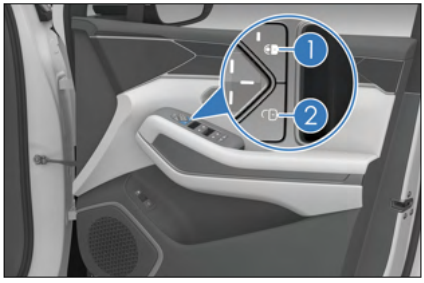
The driver's door is equipped with power door switches. Both switches can lock or unlock all doors.

① Locking

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

② Unlocking

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.



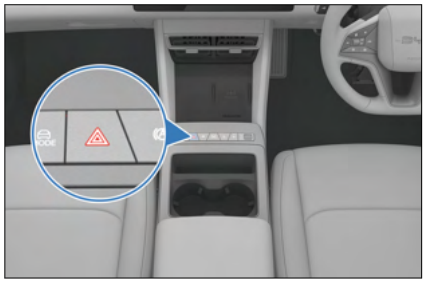
Passengers' Window Switches

When the ignition is on, the window control switches near passengers can be used to roll the associated windows up or down.



Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the button is pressed again.



Front passenger airbag switch

- Turn the PAB switch (if provided) to "ON" or "OFF" to enable or disable the front passenger front airbag.

- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.



- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling.
- Before driving, repeatedly check the PAB switch status based on the seating situation of the front passenger seat to confirm that the PAB is in the correct state.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  come on, and "OFF" and  are off. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
  - When the switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is deactivated. The passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  are off, and "OFF" and  come on. The front passenger airbag do not deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat with an activated passenger airbag. Otherwise death or serious personal injury may occur.
- When the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult, the switch must be ON to ensure that the front passenger airbag is activated.
- If the switch is OFF, the passenger airbag is still enabled, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately for maintenance.

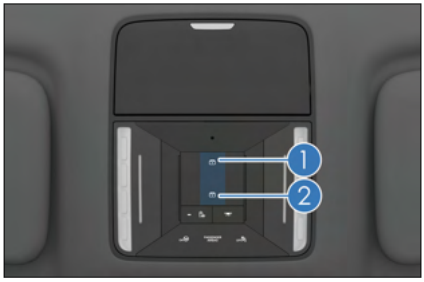
CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, only operate the PAB switch when the ignition is OFF.
- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the PAB switch is in the correct position for the passenger sitting in the front passenger seat.

Panoramic Sunroof*

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunroof open button ① to open the sunroof. Release the button midway to stop the sunroof.
- Release the button ① immediately after pressing it to open the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop, press button ① or ② midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the button ② to close the sunshade and release the button midway to stop it
- If the sunshade has been initialized, releasing the button ② immediately after pressing it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop, press button ① or ② midway.

Anti-pinch function

- If the sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

Initialization

- With the ignition on, if the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:
  - Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least 0.5 seconds to initialize the sunshade.
  - If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunshade close button, and release it when the sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least 5 seconds, and release it until the sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

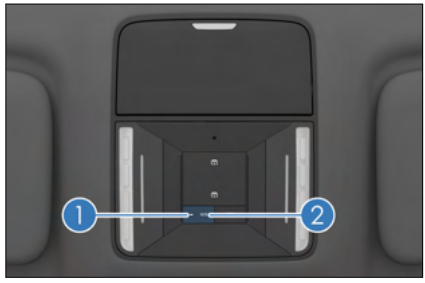
⚠ CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

Emergency Call (E-Call)

① E-Call status indicator

② SOS button



- E-Call refers to emergency call. Pressing and holding the SOS button for 1-10 seconds triggers the E-Call system manually, and pressing and holding the button for 10-20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.
- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment.
- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates relevant vehicle and accident information to a public safety answering point.

⚠ CAUTION

- If pressed and held for over 20 seconds, the SOS button will be

CAUTION

considered to be short-circuited (stuck). In that case, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.

- The dialed emergency call cannot be canceled manually. The E-Call

CAUTION

system will begin a 60-minute callback period after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or has not been answered 10 consecutive times.

Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast - 2 Hz	\
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Solid on	\

Interior Light Switch

Front Interior Lights

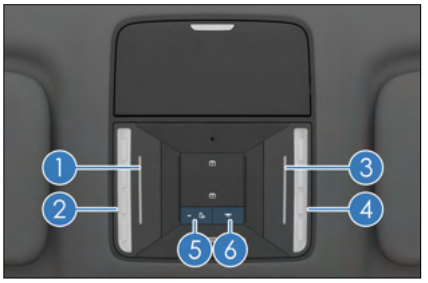
Configuration 1

①② Left front interior light switch

③④ Right front interior light switch

⑤ Door function switch

⑥ Interior light master switch

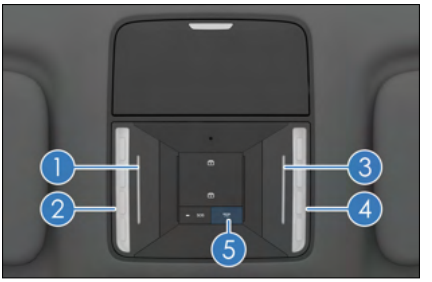


Configuration 2

①② Left front interior light switch

③④ Right front interior light switch

⑤ Interior light master switch



- Touch the left/right front interior light switch to light up the corresponding light. Touch again to turn them off.
- Enable DOOR feature by pressing DOOR switch* or by tapping the

"Interior Light Auto" switch on the shortcut menu of the infotainment touchscreen.

- When the vehicle is not powered off, the "DOOR" switch is turned on, and any door is open, interior lighting switches between high and low brightness with touches on the light switch.
- With the ignition off and "DOOR" feature on, interior lights will go off after the door have remained open for a while. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.

Side Interior Lights

Touch the covers of side interior lights to turn on the lights.



Rear Interior Lights

Touch the covers of rear interior lights to turn on the lights.



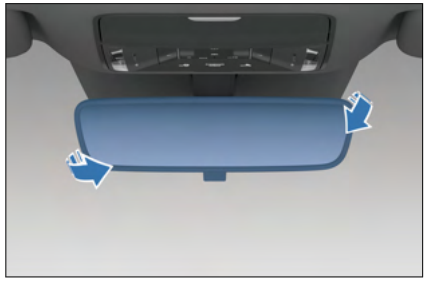
Ambient Lights*

To enable or disable the ambient light, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Light** → **Ambient Light**. Adjust the brightness, color, and areas for the ambient lights.

Side Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- To avoid the mirror falling off, do not adjust the mirror forcibly if it is stuck.
- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

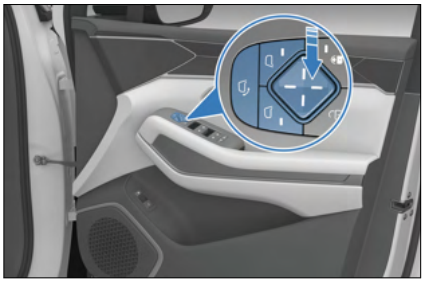
The automatic anti-glare rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare

function, which automatically adjusts the lens color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.

Power Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

- Selection switches: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left side mirror button
  - : Right side mirror button
- Side mirror adjustment buttons : Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to an appropriate position.



Folding Side Mirrors

- Fold switch : Press it to fold the side mirrors with power. Press again to unfold the mirrors.
  - Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when disarmed.
  - To enable or disable side mirror auto fold, go to infotainment touchscreen → → Drive → Comfort Driving.

WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.
- The side mirrors have reverse tilt function*: The power side mirrors automatically tilt downward when the vehicle is reversing.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions 94
Battery 109
Usage Precautions 112
Starting and Driving 122
Driver Assistance 134

Charging/ Discharging Instructions

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a relatively safe environment, and avoid charging in damp areas, or areas with fire or heat sources.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.
- Before charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the charging connector's or port's plug, socket, or metal terminals are loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, the port, the power plug, or the socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports.
  - Do not use charging equipment that does not meet safety standards or has potential safety hazards. Do not allow children to use the charging equipment and keep animals away from the vehicle while charging.
- Ensure that your hands are properly dry before charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Do not charge the vehicle in a thunderstorm to prevent risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not open the hood for maintenance while charging.
- After charging, do not disconnect the charging equipment with wet hands or while standing on any wet surface.
  - Before driving, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected from the charge port.

Charging Precautions

- Although AC and DC charging* can be carried out in any power mode, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging to ensure safety. The

vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.

- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, pay attention to the followings:
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it. This will damage the charging equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
  - To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
  - Do not force the charging connector in with the immobilizer system activated.
- Take caution when using the equipment.
  - The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.

Precautions before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- With the charge port unlocked, open the port, hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

Precautions during charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging. Do not block the front of the vehicle within half a meter.

- It is normal that when the battery is heating up and working, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- During DC charging*, it is recommended to charge the battery to 80%–90%, and full charging is OK if time permits.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- Battery temperatures that are too low or too high compromise vehicle charging performance:
  - In the case of low-temperature charging, the battery thermal management can improve the low-temperature charging capacity of the battery, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. These are normal phenomenons.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is better to charge the vehicle in a heated space indoors.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster It is normal that it may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC and charging facilities.

Precautions after charging:

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing and holding its button (if equipped).
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
- Suggestions for using mode 2 charging cable: To stop charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.
- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile.	Consult card balance or contact charging station staff.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Ensure the charger switch has come up. Check cable length and connection correctness.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect the vehicle to another 12V low-voltage battery to charge its own low-voltage battery after the vehicle is powered on.
	The local standard grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	Charging connection switch is pressed.	If the charging connection switch is pressed, the charging will stop. The charging connection should be connected again to start charging.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The power is off.	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down.
	The vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check Before Charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - When the metal terminals of the charging connector, charge port, power plug, or power socket are loose or damaged by rust, corrosion, or ablation.
  - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*

Before mode 2 charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read ***P94*** in "Charging Instructions".
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read ***P94*** in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

- This Mode 2 charging cable* includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. Connect the plug to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- When using mode 2 charging cable, activate the immobilizer system of the charge port.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:
   - Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Plug the mode 2 charging cable into a household socket.
4. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
   - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster or infotainment screen lights up.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P102*** for details.
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
   - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
2. Unplug the charging connector:

- If the immobilizer is deactivated, you can pull out the charging connector directly.
- If the immobilizer is active, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch (when the key is nearby), then pull out the charging connector to disconnect the power plug.

REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is active, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within two minutes, or the port will re-lock.
- You can activate or deactivate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P98*** for function settings.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P108*** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly with the charge port's immobilizer system deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
5. Store the charging equipment properly.

REMINDER

- When the port cap is fully open, do not close the charge port door.

Using AC Charging Piles

Before using AC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read and observe ***P94*** in the charging safety warnings.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P94*** in this section.

Equipment

- AC charging box*
  - consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
  - Charge with a charging box. For the use of its equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
- Three-phase AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using an AC charging pile in a public place, AC charging piles are always installed at large supermarkets, shopping malls and parking lots.
  - Using a BYD three-phase AC charging pile is also allowed. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap:
   - See ***P98*** for steps to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the AC charge port cap.
2. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Skip this step if an AC charging box is used for charging.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
   - Use a self-prepared AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the three-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.
3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
4. Charging settings:
   - Skip this step if an AC charging box or a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
   - For public single-phase AC charging pile/box with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box details.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P102*** for function settings.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Unplug the charging connector according to ***P98***.
3. Disconnect the power plug.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
   - Skip this step if an AC charging box is used for charging.
   - If mode 2 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
4. Close the AC charge port cap and the port door.
5. Store the equipment properly.
   - Place the charging connector in its designated location in the charging pile/box.

Charging Pile DC Charging*

Before using DC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P94*** in this section.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P94*** in this section.

Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Check the instructions of the charging piles.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle unlocked, try to power off the vehicle, and press the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle to open the door.
2. Open the DC charge port cap:
   - Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector of the DC charging piles into the DC charge port and lock it.
4. Start charging:
   - Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Pull out the charging connector.
3. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
4. Organize the charging equipment:
   - After DC charging with a charging pile, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in the designated position properly.

CAUTION

- If the connector cannot be pulled out after charging, contact customer service of the charging pile in a timely manner.
- In case of high-temperature DC charging, the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the A/C in the passenger compartment, and the charging performance may degrade, resulting in an extended charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.

Smart Charging

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Energy** → **Charge/Discharge** to go to the Smart Charging screen.

Smart charging settings

① Scheduled charging switch

② Start and end time of charging

③ Repeat cycle



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the switch ① on, set the start and end time ② and repeat cycle ③, and save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen of the charging start time. You can switch to instant charging if needed. In a cold environment, the battery preheating function is automatically activated.

REMINDER

- The smart charging function is only dedicated for AC charging piles provided by BYD. If you need to use this function via a public charging facility, please make sure that the facility supports vehicle-terminal reservation.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- The instant charging on PAD is effective only for current preset. To cancel all presets, please turn off the preset charging switch on the setting interface.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector* is connected.

Discharging Instructions*

- This vehicle is equipped with external discharging feature*. External discharging refers to vehicle-to-load (V2L) discharging.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See ***P94*** for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires, to prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the discharging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.

WARNING

- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.
- The engine starts when the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or near combustible or explosive materials.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, please refer to the precautions for charging equipment included in ***P94***.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range. This function is recommended when the vehicle has a higher SOC.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the discharging connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.
- BYD's original discharging connection device is required, and the vehicle discharging function may not work properly with non-BYD products.

V2L External Discharging

1. Equipment

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) equipment: The device consists of a discharging connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.

2. Discharging

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
  - See ***P98*** to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the charge port cap on the right side of the vehicle.
- Check before discharging:
  - Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
  - Ensure the V2L connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
  - In any of these cases, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Firmly connect the V2L discharging connector to the charge port.
- Start discharging:
  - After the switch button on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator becomes solid red, indicating that the socket can be used.

- After the device is connected, discharge begins and discharging information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. Setting discharging duration

- Afte the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging is automatically enabled and a countdown dispalys on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to access the "Vehicle To Load" setting screen.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharging connector, toggle the "Vehicle To Load" on or off.
  - When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition off, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition on, it will automatically start the engine to generate electricity, no setting required.

  - Tap the Settings button for single discharge to set the desired discharge duration on the infotainment touchscreen.

CAUTION

- Discharging cannot be toggled on without connecting the connector. In that case, when tapped, the Vehicle To Load button will be grayed out after a while, which is a normal phenomenon.
- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

4. Stopping discharging

- End discharging:
  - Press the switch on the discharging socket.
  - In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (not recommended).
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - Remove the connector from the charge port.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P98***).
- Organize the equipment:
  - Store the equipment in the luggage storage box or the net bag after discharging.

Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set target SOC.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC Setting

- Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To enable or diable SAVE mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.
  - SAVE mode on: prioritizes battery power saving, keeping battery power not below the target set as far as possible. If the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, lowering the target SOC help make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce fuel consumption. Otherwise, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
  - SAVE mode off: fuel economy is prioritized, although battery power keeping is considered.
- For a better driving and riding experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the lower limit of the target SOC according to the altitude and ambient temperature.

In-Situ Power Generation

- During parking, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine drives the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. Therefore, engine running in a differernt speed from being idle is normal. Power generation stops when the SOC reaches above a certain level.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous driving mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Electricity Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, if the SOC is lower than a certain value, pressing the accelerator pedal can generate electricity. Controlling the accelerator depth can generate electricity with different power.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate electricity.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the power of electricity generated by pressing the accelerator pedal is limited by the charging power or the motor generating capacity, and the power changes on the instrument cluster.

Regenerative Braking Settings

- During driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when

the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.

- The function can be set in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **Regenerative Braking**. Select an energy regeneration mode according to your driving habits so that the vehicle delivery optimal regenerative braking experience based on the chosen mode and actual driving conditions.
  - Standard: Requires longer deceleration time and coast distance than the High mode.
  - High: Provides maximum energy recovery, resulting in a higher vehicle deceleration.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.
- The set regenerative braking intensity will be memorized. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

WARNING

- Energy recovery cannot replace braking. In scenarios requiring a significant deceleration or driving downhill at a significant slope, the driver should apply the brakes as needed based on the actual situation.
- Do not set the regeneration intensity when driving at high speed, as you may be distracted, resulting in accidents.

CAUTION

- The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

Charge Port Anti-theft Lock

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft during charging and discharging. This function is disabled by default. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charge/Discharge** to enable the charging port immobilizer system.



- When the function is enabled or in the intelligent mode, you can unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.

- Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
- The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	/	No
2	Enabled	Start	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locked	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Start	/	Yes
5	Intelligent	Locked	The vehicle is fully charged	Yes
			The vehicle is not fully charged	No
6	Intelligent	Start	/	Yes

REMINDER

- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the immobilizer system of the charge port is disabled. When this system is enabled or in the intelligent mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- To ensure the normal driving after charging, close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port

When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer, unlock the charge port manually.

- Open the trunk lid.
- The emergency unlocking is located on the right side of the trunk. Slightly pull the emergency rope to unlock the charging connector.
- Put the cap back after the connector is pulled out.



REMINDER

- If the above functions are abnormal or fail, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Battery

High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles*, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new vehicles with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.

REMINDER

- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. When you find that the pure electric mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- If the vehicle is going to be idle for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If the vehicle is going to be idle for over three months, charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low-Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- When the outside temperature is low, the high-voltage battery heating system will be activated and heat

up the battery to improve the low-temperature charging speed and ensure the vehicle power and driving range.

WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Any organization or individual who illegally disassemble or dismantle the battery shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents so caused.

CAUTION

- When the high-voltage battery fails, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery works normally at temperatures between -35°C and 60°C.
- Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

- The low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the vehicle can automatically initiate the high-voltage battery to charge the low-voltage battery, extending its lifespan.

REMINDER

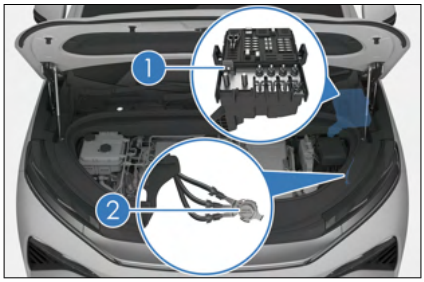
- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition "OFF" produces a sound which is heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

- **Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch**
  - The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be located or unlocked with the smart key.

Press the microswitch on the driver's door handle (see ***P62*** for details) to activate the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.

- Wake-up by jump starting
  - When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12V power supply to start the vehicle by two specially designed cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low. The instrument cluster may display "The low-voltage battery SOC is low, and the vehicle is going to be powered off", and the vehicle will become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.
  - The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the under-hood PDB. The connection terminals for the jump start in the under-hood PDB are shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above steps, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Do not jump start another vehicle unless your vehicle is powered on. Otherwise, the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- If the low-voltage battery SOC is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Please carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery without permission, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that the jump start be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-hood PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.

Intelligent Charging

- When the low-voltage battery is low on charge, the intelligent charging function is triggered to extend its runtime.
- When the high-voltage battery is low on charge, the vehicle may start the engine to generate power to meet

the needs of the intelligent charging function.

- This model is provided with the smart charging function. It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

REMINDER

- When the low-voltage battery power is low, the smart charging will be activated, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After locking the vehicle, if the high-voltage battery charge level drops to the point of triggering the engine to generate power, it will consume a small amount of fuel and emit a little exhaust.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-economic mode.

Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:

- Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
- Avoid speeding.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
- During the break-in period, the proportion of driving in HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) shall not be less than 50%.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with optional towing function and in areas permitted by laws and regulations.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Comment
Maximum towing capacity (braked)	DMi: 1800 DMp: 2000	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)	750	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load	200	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 290 kPa and rear tires to 310 kPa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In such cases, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h, and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the pressure recommended for normal driving conditions.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The highest towing speed should not exceed 100 km/h under any circumstances.
- The hitch is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles as this may cause vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

Speed control

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail

higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolonging the high-voltage battery usage:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% - 60% which is not too high or too low, and close the doors and windows.
- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every three months, and then charge it to 40% - 60% for storage.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the SOC indicator bar on the instrument cluster enters the red alert area, it indicates that the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the vehicle in time and avoid driving with low SOC for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every one to two weeks.
- When the temperature is high, avoid long-term storage of vehicles at full power. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid driving the vehicle continuously for a long time; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If a fault indication is displayed on the instrument cluster during driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

WARNING

- In low or high temperature environments, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced compared with the normal temperature and power performance will also be affected.

CAUTION

- If the pure-electric driving range drops to 0 on the instrument cluster, the battery must be charged. If it is not charged within seven days, the battery will suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline that meets local standards. For fuel type, refer ***P256*** attached on the inner side of the fuel door.

CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

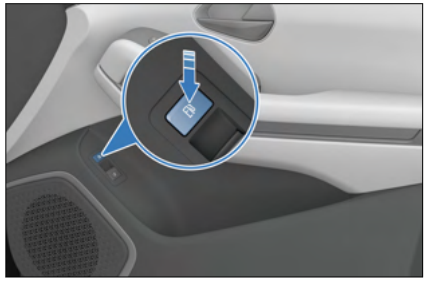
CAUTION

- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

Refueling

- The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.
- Turn the vehicle off.

1. Open the fuel door.
   - After the vehicle is powered off, press the pressure releasing switch on the driver's side door. Once the instrument cluster indicates that the pressure releasing is complete, press the fuel door manually.



2. Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.
   - The fuel tank cap is connected to the fuel door with a cord to prevent loss. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel door.



3. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel door.

WARNING

- Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:
  - It is recommended to add fuel outdoors.
  - Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
  - Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the charging connector is not done by rule, such as burning fuel.

CAUTION

- Due to variations in fuel tank pressure, the time required for the fuel tank to release pressure and unlock the fuel door may vary. This inconsistency in the unlocking time for the fuel door is a normal phenomenon.
- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Check whether the fuel tank cap is tightened and whether the fuel door is closed in time after refueling.
- If the fuel tank cap is not tightened, may lights up on the instrument cluster.
- If the refueling is not completed within 15 minutes after the fuel door is opened, close the door and press the pressure releasing switch adain to add fuel, otherwise the reverse spray of oil may occur during refueling.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.

- The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in larger fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C to reduce fuel consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode for ventilation.
- Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
- Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
- Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
- When the engine is cold, do not run at a high speed or drive with the accelerator pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive slowly after starting.
- Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
- Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
- Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal if unnecessary, because this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed to save fuel.
- Keep the front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions,

the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been in an accident that may damage the underside of the vehicle.

WARNING

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine shall be limited to the time when the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.
- When the trunk is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous

WARNING

environment. If the vehicle must be started with the trunk open, all windows should be lowered and the interior air control system should be adjusted according to the following prompts:

- Choose "fresh air mode" mode.
- Select the "face/foot level" mode.
- The fan speed is set at "high RPM".

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the trunk for large and heavy objects.
- Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.
- Please read the following information carefully before carrying luggage.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper loading affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may even result in collision accidents.

WARNING

- Observe the total load limits and other loading guidelines in this Manual.
- Do not carry articles with strong magnetism to avoid interference with the normal running of the vehicle.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

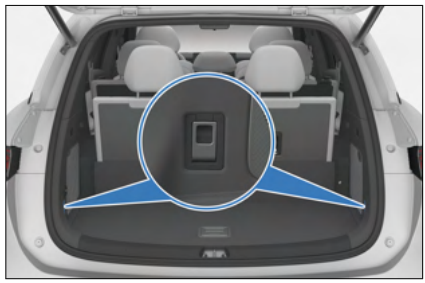
- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

WARNING

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Carry luggage in the trunk

- There are a total of 4 luggage securing points on the side panels of the trunk.
- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.



Roof Rack

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- Do not open the sunroof with luggage on the roof rack, or you may risk damaging the sunroof and other components with the beam or the luggage.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof rack evenly and keep the center of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack elevate the overall center of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load evenly distributed over the beam is: 50 kg.

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof

CAUTION

metal sheet is not designed for loading.

- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Wading into Water

- Before driving into flooded areas, check the water depth and make sure it does not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over. Releasing the pedal may cause exhaust backpressure to suck water into the engine, resulting in severe engine damage. Maintain a steady and slow speed through the flooded area by gently pressing the accelerator.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the engine in flooded areas.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.
- It is not recommended to wade into deep water unless necessary.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accident when there is any water or slurry on the brake disc surface, as this may increase the brake response time thus extending the braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- Never let water enter the engine. If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road. Prevent water from entering the engine, otherwise the engine will be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- When driving in deep water, if the vehicle is in EV mode, do not manually switch to HEV mode, or avoid the vehicle automatically switching to HEV mode due to low battery SOC, which could cause the engine to start while submerged in water, leading to engine damage.
- During wading, if it is found that water enters the engine intake pipe or the engine fails, do not start the engine again, otherwise it may be damaged.
- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused

WARNING

will not be covered by the vehicle's warranty

- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- Water in high-voltage components reduces ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance, posing a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach over 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is not only harmful to your health, but can also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, electrical connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, and light fixtures, may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.

- Select a proper parking location.
  - When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the three-way catalytic converter rises after a long-term drive.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. Try to put out the fire if possible.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.
- Look for the ignition point. If the front compartment is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the front compartment. Keeping the hood closed controls the fire so that the fire can be put out more easily.) Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

Starting and Driving

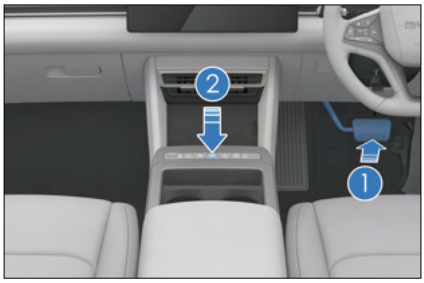
Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ② and press the START/STOP button ① at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the

instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.

- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



The vehicle cannot power on when

- The vehicle cannot power on when:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, if the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the key may not be in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, trunk, or storage compartment.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- The vehicle is in Park.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the smart key start button for over 15 seconds.

WARNING

- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

Auto Power On/Off

- Enable or disable smart power-on/power-off in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: After unlocking with the valid smart key, microswitch, NFC digital key*, bluetooth* or by using cloud service*, open the driver's door for the first time while carrying the valid key to activate the feature.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, phone NFC*, bluetooth* or cloud service*, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch or phone NFC*.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- Opening the driver's door after another cannot not power on the vehicle.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/

REMINDER

STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.

- Auto power on is not operational when the hood is open.
- To prevent false triggering, Bluetooth and cloud service can only lock but not power off the vehicle.
- In the case of auto power on by opening the driver's door, locking from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key* automatically powers off the vehicle. There is no need to press the START/STOP button.

Remote Start

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



3. After the vehicle is started, pressing and holding the remote start/stop button on the smart key for two seconds switches the ignition off. The turn signals then flash twice.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving a long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: After the vehicle has been stationary for some time, check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or

looseness and check any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

Preparations Before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust the rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Kick-Down Function*

- While driving, when the vehicle is climbing a hill or needs to accelerate quickly, press the accelerator pedal to near its end. As the pedal resistance increases, the Kick-Down function is triggered, causing the engine RPM to rise and providing greater power to the vehicle.
- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.
- Faults of the battery, generator or engine affect Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by many factors. Taking appropriate measures, such as good driving habits and regular maintenance, can not only improve the driving range and reduce fuel consumption, but also contribute to environmental protection.

- Try to maintain the "ECO" mode while driving.
- Keep the vehicle in good conditions.
  - Maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economic performance.
  - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month. Before a long journey, check the tire pressure and adjust it if

necessary. (Tire pressure that is too low will increase rolling resistance, which will in turn increase power consumption and fuel consumption, while also accelerating tire wear.)

- Try to use the economic speed as much as possible.
  - Maintaining an economical driving speed can effectively increase the driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Excessive speed or low speed can be detrimental to fuel efficiency. Try to maintain your vehicle at an optimal speed for fuel efficiency while making sure your safety.
- Anticipatory Driving
  - Under the premise of ensuring driving safety;
  - Avoid unnecessary sudden acceleration and braking;
  - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead;
  - When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.
  - Try to maintain a constant speed.
- Use the energy recovery system appropriately.
  - Under the premise of ensuring safety, choose an appropriate braking strength based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, try to gently apply the brakes to slow down and avoid sudden deceleration.
- Reduce unnecessary items inside the vehicle.
  - Additional weight will increase energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
  - Heating and cooling processes are very energy-intensive and can significantly reduce the driving range and increase fuel consumption. Proper use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce electricity and fuel consumption.
- Disable functions that are not currently needed.
  - Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- It is recommended to accelerate gradually to reduce wear and tear caused by sudden acceleration.

Disus-C*

- The Disus-C system is an electronically controlled shock absorber suspension system, which adjusts the driving comfort and stability by controlling the damping force of the electronically controlled shock absorber. Users can select comfort control modes of "Comfort" or "Sport" by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → YunNian App.



Comfort control

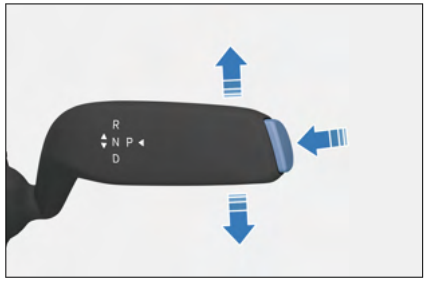
- Comfort control: During acceleration and deceleration, the vehicle pitching caused by load transfer is controlled by the coordination of the electronically controlled suspension damping and the brake end pressure, which improves the driving comfort.
- Users can select three comfort control modes of "weak", "moderate" or "strong" by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → YunNian App → Suspension settings.

CAUTION

- In case of emergency braking, its effect may be reduced.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the gearshift lever, move the lever up or down to switch between "R", "N", and "D" gears. Press the right-side button to shift into "P" gear.
- After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift from "P" to other gears.
- "P" gear is for parking. Press this button to park the vehicle.



WARNING

- To prevent damaging the transmission, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to Park before the driver gets out.
- "D": Drive, shift to Drive gear to drive the vehicle normally.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into Drive.
- Shifting out of Park or into Drive requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- If the motor is turned off and the vehicle travels for a long time after it is in Neutral, the transmission may be severely damaged due to lack of lubrication.
- When the engine or motor is running and the vehicle is in the

WARNING

"R"/"D" gear, be sure to stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal, as the actuator can still transmit force and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.

- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- In order to prevent accidents, never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.
- Never coast downhill in Neutral or Park.
- To prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally, press the "P" gear button after parking. If the electronic parking brake indicator light does not illuminate after switching to "P", manually activate the electronic parking brake via the infotainment touchscreen to ensure safety.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and on the instrument cluster flashes and then stays on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

This function is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.
- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB activated" message is displayed.
- Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily. If the driver's door is opened in Drive or Reverse, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

REMINDER

- The EPB is not automatically engaged if you switch off the ignition immediately after pressing the EPB switch.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test. During this process, the EPB

REMINDER

system does not respond to any operations.

WARNING

- To activate electronic parking brake trailer mode for vehicle towing when the vehicle breaks down or for brake pad replacement, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. To exit tow mode, simply press the "P" button.
- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope, to prevent it from rolling.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- On a flat road or small slope (gradient less than 10°), with the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse, engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, continue to press the "P" button for over two seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button and the EPB switch for emergency braking in normal driving.
- If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.
- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road

WARNING

sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any possible accident.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ on the instrument cluster is solid on.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ comes on the instrument cluster and then turns off in a few seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. ⓘ turns on and then off in a few seconds on the instrument cluster. If it does not go off, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, the gearshift is not to be used to replace EPB when parking. EPB must be used instead, and the vehicle must be in "P" gear.
- The EPB switch must not be operated when the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

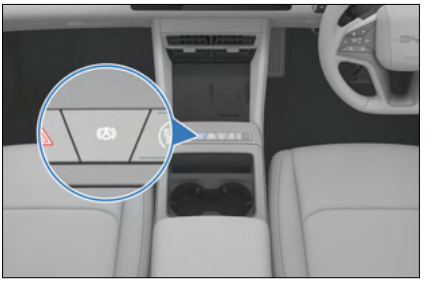
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Auto Vehicle Hold(AVH): is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, enable or disable AVH by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Auto Hold**.
- When AVH is on, the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is displayed on the instrument cluster.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state

with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - To activate AVH function, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlocking the driver's seat belt.
  - Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged objects or other road obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. When checking if they are wet, first ensure the surroundings are safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. While driving carefully, lightly press the brake pedal with the EPB engaged.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly

WARNING

use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.

- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the engine or drive motor is running.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is running normally, the vehicle power output will be cut off for emergency power-off if the "START/STOP" button is pressed and held for over three seconds. At this time, it is recommended to press the hazard warning light button, coast along the roadside, and gradually slow down until the vehicle stops by pressing the brake pedal, engaging the EPB or hitting surrounding obstacles at a low speed.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator

CAUTION

pedal for a long time during driving. Otherwise, this will cause overheating, wear and waste of electric energy.

- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle battery is low, you can use the on-board generator function. Refer to the charging instructions section for more information.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Incorrect coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Confirm that the engine oil viscosity is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.

- These can be found in the BYD authorized dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.
- The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by vehicle manufacturer.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Use thin snow chains. Some snow chains may damage tires, wheels, suspensions, and the vehicle body. The recommended snow chains are no larger than 5 mm in thickness or diameter, which provides enough space between tires and other parts in the hubcap.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install the chains symmetrically on the left and right sides and remove them immediately after driving out of snowy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- Please turn off the engine and engage the parking brake before installing snow chains. Do not Install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient

Driver Assistance

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. If the road ahead is clear, the vehicle will maintain the set target cruise speed and continue to drive forward. and adjusts speed according to the set time-based following distance once a front vehicle is detected.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct traveling direction of the vehicle.

ACC Function Status

- When ACC is activation-ready, if the conditions for activating ACC are currently met, the driver can activate the ACC feature using the steering wheel button. If the conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Feature Unavailable" message.
- When ACC is activated, it allows the vehicle to cruise at the target speed or automatically adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead. It will be overridden if the accelerator pedal is pressed and will continue when the pedal is released.
- When ACC malfunctions, a function unavailable prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster in response to ACC activation attempts.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
ACC On Status		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current ignition cycle.
ACC On Status		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current ignition cycle. The cruise speed before last ACC deactivation is displayed in the indicator icon.
Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC Fault		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it is faulty.

How to Use

Activation Conditions

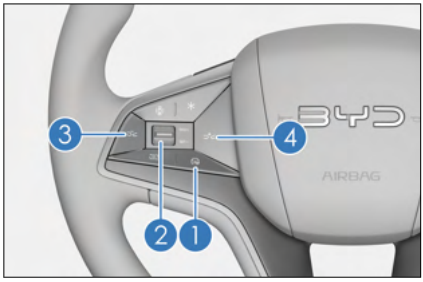
- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed), stepping on the brake pedal or engaging EPB activates ACC.
- If the vehicle is traveling (speed greater than 0), ACC can be activated when the brake pedal is not stepped on.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

Activation Methods

- For the first time of ACC use in the current ignition cycle, only pressing button ① works. IF ACC has been activated in a current ignition cycle, push lever ② up to activated it again.



- Press button ① to activate the feature, the system set to cruise at the current speed. If it is below 30 km/h, the target cruise speed is set to 30 km/h. If is activated by pushing up rocker switch ②, the target cruise speed is set to the speed before last deactivation.

WARNING

- The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. You are supposed to set target speed as per local traffic laws and regulations and respond to changes in a timely manner to ensure driving safety.

Set target cruise speed

- When ACC is active, set the vehicle to a speed between 30 km/h and 150 km/h by pushing rocker switch ② up or down. When the button ② is toggled up for a short time, the target cruise speed increases by 5km/h for a single time; when the button ② is toggled down for a short time, the target cruise speed decreases by 5km/h for a single time; when the button ② remains toggled up, the target cruising speed continuously increases by 1 km/h; when the key ② remains toggled down, the target cruising speed continuously decreases by 1 km/h.

WARNING

- ACC cannot immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Never be over-reliant on the system.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Set the following distance

- The driver can use buttons ③ and ④ to increase and decrease the following distance to the lead vehicle respectively. For each gear position, as the vehicle speed increases, the distance from the preceding vehicle also increases.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, and the default setting is level 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and lets the vehicle speed up, slow down, brake, and start accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle in front is highlighted with blue color. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level

(See "Setting the time-based following distance").

- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - ACC automatically accelerates your vehicle away from a standstill if the vehicle ahead pulls away within a short period of time.
  - If your vehicle has stopped for a longer period of time, resume motion by pressing the accelerator pedal or pushing up the cruise button ④ as prompted.
  - ACC will be canceled and EPB engaged after the ACC system holds your vehicle at a standstill for too long. In that case, you will have to disengage EPB and press the brake pedal in order to reactivate ACC.
- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode：
  - In Sport Mode, the vehicle provides faster acceleration.
  - In Normal Mode, the vehicle provides moderate acceleration.
  - In Economic Mode, the vehicle provides smooth acceleration.

Follow-to-stop/start

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffics.
- ACC may not correctly recognize the target if the front vehicle or pedestrian is too close.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active (The configuration on your actual vehicle may differ.)

- The driver can enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust cruise speed by acelerator**.

- When ACC is activated, you can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal; the driver assistance system does not brake during this process.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal to increase current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal to raise the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is over 80 km/h, it will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released after acceleration.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h, and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, it will be updated to 80km/h when the accelerator pedal is released,.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h, and the real-time speed is below 80 km/h after acceleration, it will be updated to the real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released,.
- If the lever ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is turned off on the infotainment touchscreen and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by pressing button ① or depressing the brake pedal. When the vehicle is stationary, the system can only be exited by pressing button ①.

Deceleration on curves* (also applicable for ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- The driver can set the switch status of the function through the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → Curve speed deceleration switch, which is off by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System Limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The mmWave radar and camera are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their field of view could interfere the intended functionality. In particular, if the sensor is covered by snow completely, ACC deactivates itself and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, carriage, pedestrian, motorized bicycle or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.

- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even with ACC properly set, it remains essential to ensure the vehicle can be brought to a full stop at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see the chapter "Safety Assist").
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is above 80 km/h.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes*.
- Situations where ACC and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to incorrect operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/ traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
    - The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
  - Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
    - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
    - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
    - Mountain roads and rural roads
    - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections.
    - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
    - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
    - Presence of curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
  - Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
    - Congested intersections
    - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
    - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot
    - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
    - Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane
    - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong way
    - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
    - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off
  - Other issues

- Include but are not limited to other situations listed under general system limitations.

WARNING

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- As a driver, it is your responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed. That is, the system may not give timely warnings in every case, which necessitates your prompt responses.
- When active with the vehicle motionless, ACC identifies any stationary obstacle ahead as the target and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However,

WARNING

this function does not cover all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.

- ACC may brake the vehicle if it is too close to the adjacent lane or if the adjacent vehicle is too close too your lane.
- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).
- In rare cases, while the vehicle stops as does the vehicle ahead, the system may fail to recognize the rear of the vehicle ahead, such as the rear axle of a truck with a higher chassis or vehicle bumper. This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or

WARNING

service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the front camera in any of the following situations:

- The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
- Wheel alignment has been carried out.
- The vehicle has experienced a collision.
- Impaired ACC performance is noticed or the instrument cluster indicates an system error.

CAUTION

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. You are fully responsible for your driving safety and must always be aware of surroundings.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

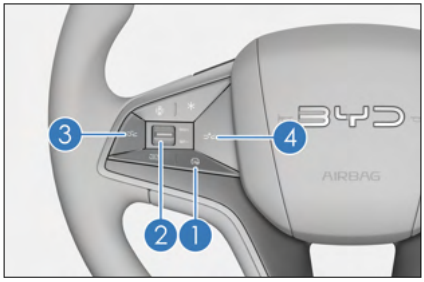
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

- Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) can control the vehicle within a speed range of 0-130 km/h to assist the driver and stay within the current lane, primarily suitable for roads with clear lane markings and good road conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel while the function is active and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, the driver must always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. The driver must be prepared to take immediate corrective action to ensure safe driving. If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

How to Use

Activation Methods

- ICC is activated when displays on the instrument.
- Setting Method
  - Select ICC on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - Pressing button ① to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (e.g., no lane lines), ACC will be activated first. Once the activation conditions are met, ICC will be automatically activated.



- displays on the instrument when ICC is successfully activated. Target speed will be shown in the indicator .

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruising and following-distance control and all ACC operations such as adjusting target speed and following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In certain situations, such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- Pressing the steering wheel button ① or firmly pressing and then releasing the brake pedal during the vehicle's waiting period will cause the vehicle to exit the ICC, which may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly due to idling, thus causing an accident. Aways pay attention to the system prompts and the driving environment. In case of idle driving, correct and actively control the vehicle in time to ensure safe driving.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.

Driver disengagement alert

- If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- The following actions can interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turning off the hazard lights or activating a turn signal.
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal while turning the steering wheel.
  - Canceling ICC using the steering wheel control button.
  - Shifting to Park.
- If the third-level alert is triggered three times within the same ignition cycle, ICC will be disabled and can only be reactivated after the system is restarted.

Exiting ICC

- Press the button ① or brake pedal to exit if the vehicle is not stationary.
- Press the button ① to exit if the vehicle is stationary.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC fault, unavailable

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned in lane, no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail when driving through intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in

WARNING

situations such as backlight, front light, glare, bright light, snow covered roads, and roads with heavily worn lane markings.

- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.
- As speed limit recognition could be misled by map effectiveness, vehicle network, and road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws. (Only applicable to vehicles with one-pressing speed limit function)

Function Overview

- When TSR system detects that the speed limit value is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the speed limit When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit value.
- The system's operating speed range is 30–150 km/h.

Function Settings

- ISLC setting: infotainment touchscreen → ADAS → Safety Assist → Traffic Sign Recognition → Intelligent Speed Limit Control.
  - ISLC is disabled by default.
  - The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle is just started.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the function precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed, and the system limitations need to be fully understood and considered when using ISLC.

Front Safety Assist

Front Collision Warning (FCW)

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

FCW includes three functions:

- Safe distance warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at 65-150 km/h, the system continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. If following the vehicle ahead closely in a long-time is detected, the system issues a safe distance warning to prompt the driver that the following distance is too close.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a textual prompt is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - When the vehicle runs at 15-150 km/h, the system will give a pre-alarm when it detects a collision risk between the vehicle and the target in front. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, a textual prompt is displayed, and the buzzer alarms.
- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at a speed between 15 km/h and 150 km/h and the driver does not respond to the pre-warning, the system will issue an emergency warning through auditory, visual, and tactile alerts. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, a textual prompt is displayed, and there is a short braking warning.

WARNING

- FCW is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. FCW can

WARNING

not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disenabled.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.
  - Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.

REMINDER

- The default setting is moderate.
- Default sensitivity setting:
  - If the feature was disabled during the last trip, the system remember the last setting.
  - If the feature was disabled during the last trip, the system resets the sensitivity to the default value "Moderate" upon vehicle power-up).

System Limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians obscured by other objects
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
  - Forward collision warning may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
  - If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.

WARNING

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. FCW is not a substitute for the driver's normal judgment and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a warning is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted alarms in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.

WARNING

- There may also be unnecessary alarm intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then,

REMINDER

foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning is disabled. After clearing, the forward collision warning is normal.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- AEB uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of serious collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- When the vehicle runs at 4 km/h-150 km/h, AEB continuously monitors the forward driving environment in real-time. When detecting a risk of collision with vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists ahead, the system automatically applies braking pressure to decelerate the vehicle.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator, a prompt message with animation is shown, and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency,

WARNING

and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. AEB can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- To enable or disable FCW and AEB, go to the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- It is recommended that not to disable the AEB function. If it is disabled, the vehicle will be unable to assist the driver in reducing vehicle speed or avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- AEB is enabled by default and will remain enabled after each restart.

System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Poor road conditions such as pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.

- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.

- In complex traffic situations, AEB may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- System performance may be reduced in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Improper tire inflation or excessive tire wear.
  - Unqualified tires installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or emergency tire repair kit.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in break-in period.
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
- AEB cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes* such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for the driver's judgement and operation.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the

WARNING

restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a braking is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.

- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted braking in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary braking intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

WARNING

REMINDER

- The system will not trigger AEB when the driver is aware of an emergency warning but turns the steering wheel, accelerates or brakes.
- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. IF AEB is off because that sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, clear the sensor to make it function normally.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

- When the vehicle is traveling at around 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front

bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.

- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver via an audible beep from the buzzer and a visual prompt on the instrument cluster or from ambient light, rendered according to the radar detection side.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory. The system defaults to settings just before the last power-off when the vehicle starts.

System Limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive gear.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as front obstructions, target type, or appearance timing. This could result in no warning, false warning, or delayed warning. Such scenarios include but are not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to issue adequate warning.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - A vehicle coming from the side changes lanes suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.

- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other situations.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.

- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

WARNING

- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

- When the vehicle is traveling at a speed below 20 km/h, the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- During braking, the instrument cluster issues warnings via text and visual prompts, rendered according to the radar detection side.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects.
- Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- FCTB is enabled only when the Alert + Braking setting is selected.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive gear.
  - The front hood or trunk is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to front occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking, false braking, or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to brake.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - A vehicle coming from the side changes lanes suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late

at sharp turns, slopes, or other situations.

- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.

- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system identifies speed limit signs on the road through the multi-purpose camera or maps. When the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster lights up, it means the vehicle speed should be within range.

Function Overview

- TSR contains two sub-functions: Speed limit information function (SLIF) and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
- SLIF: detects speed limit information by using cameras or maps and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster when being activated.
- ISA: When the instrument cluster shows the speed is above the identified speed limit, the speed limit icon will provide a visual or audible alert to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.

Function settings

- Switch TSR and related features on or off on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
- TSR is on by deafault when the vehicle starts.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Speed limit change tone: mutes or unmutes the tone indicating speed limit sign change.
- ISA: enables or disables the indicator or audible alarm for driving over the speed limit sign.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): The audible alert for when the vehicle speed

exceeds the speed limit can be enabled/disabled via the dropdown interface on the Home Screen.

REMINDER

- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involves in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. Perform the repair immediately if it fails to restore.
- If TSR malfunctions and is unavailable, Perform the repair in time.

System Limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered speed limit signs
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations
- System operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windshield glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and respond in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs
  - Incomplete speed limit signs.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the

CAUTION

vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.

- Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its current lane, LDA alerts the driver or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane departure assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) The system's operating speed range is 65–150 km/h.
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- Setting on: infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Lane Departure Assist**.
- All LDA functions are enabled as delivered from the factory and every time when the vehicle is started.
- The LDA alert mode is set as steering wheel vibration by default and can be changed to Sound alert, Vibration alert or Sound + Vibration alert, which memorized by the system.
- Lane departure sensitivity: set as "Moderate" by default.When situations such as driver fatigue are detected, the system automatically adjusts to “High” sensitivity. Power cycling the vehicle will restore the sensitivity to “Moderate”.
- OFF: no LDA functions active.
- Warning: only LDW enabled, no steering intervention.
- Correction: only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.
- All activated: Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.
- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes

REMINDER

lane as indicated by the turn signal.

- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
- The function will temporarily suspend operation if any object blocks the camera or if it is exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- While the function is activated, the driver's hands must not be off the steering wheel, otherwise the system will give a visual prompt or vibration to alert the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of land markings is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera.
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
  - Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
  - Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
  - The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.

- Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
- Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle’ s steering performance.

- System operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windshield glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style.
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines.
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.

CAUTION

- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control. The LDP function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane due to lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the center of the lane. Do not rely on LDP to avoid side collisions.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

WARNING

- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, ELKA assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- Emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with corner mmWave radars. If the system determines that the driver unintentionally departs from the road or is at risk of doing so, and there is a collision risk with a detected target vehicle, it assists in steering correction to help the vehicle stay in its current lane. This helps prevent unintentional road departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

- Setting on: infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Emergency lane keeping assist**.
  - ELKA is enabled by default. and will remain enabled after each restart.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If a malfunction occurs, the indicator will illuminate in the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera.

- Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
- Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
- Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
- Unidentifiable road edge with grass, soil, or curb.
- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
- Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
- Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
- Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
- Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.

- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as the type, position, timing, or occlusion of obstacles, resulting in delayed or failed intervention. Scenarios include:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the detection area of the radar or camera.
  - Obstacles move quickly or are at close range into the front or side of the vehicle.
  - Fences, water barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles in the vehicle's front lateral or rear lateral areas that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front lateral or rear lateral areas.
  - Obstacles in the front lateral or rear lateral areas with low visual contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral areas that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle’ s steering performance.
- System operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the front camera's field of view, dyed or improperly coated windshield glass, reflective objects on the dashboard, and interference with camera sight.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes* such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.

CAUTION

- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- The ELKA function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when there is a collision risk due to unintended road or lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the center of the lane. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning

to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.

- The blind spot detection (BSD) function uses sensors such as radars and cameras to detect targets (vehicles or riders) in the driver's blind spot on the side of the vehicle. When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 15 km/h - 150 km/h, the indicator on the side mirror flashes when BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turning signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator at the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an optional audible alarm (see fucntion settings) given to remind the driver of the danger of collision.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- The driver should ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping the BSD radar sensors in good condition. For example, if they are covered in dirt, snow or other obstructions, they need to be cleared right away.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In that case, it is recommended to have a repair it in time.

Function settings

- Enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where BSD and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of DOW.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of DOW and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the DOW's side assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- Door Open Warning (DOW) detects targets (vehicles, cyclists) on both sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power-on, the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated, alerting the driver to the risk. If the driver opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a audio prompt, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.
- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.

Function settings

- Enable or disable DOW on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Door Open Warning**.
- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions. Situations where DOW and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.

- The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
- There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the radar detection area of the vehicle.
- There are small targets or slow moving targets.
- The target speed is too high or there is turning behavior, such as the target vehicle changing lanes to the rear of the vehicle, or other vehicles suddenly changing lanes and entering the detection area behind the vehicle.

- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual inspections by drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward. The function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle runs at a speed below 150 km/h, the RCW system detects the driving environment behind the vehicle in real time through sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when it identifies that the rear vehicle may rear-end the vehicle.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side are steady on, and the red area at the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument

cluster is highlighted. In addition to issuing a warning to the driver on the instrument cluster, the vehicle simultaneously activates the hazard warning lights to alert following drivers of a potential collision risk.

- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode, RCW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the RCW's rear assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned off by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the RCW system does not work.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, timing, or other factors, which may result in no warning or delayed warning.
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.

- There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radars or cameras of the vehicle.
- There are situations where the vehicle's rear is obstructed, or the obstacle has low contrast with the forward visibility environment, leading to unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete detection of the obstacle.
- The vehicle or the rear target is in a curve.
- The vehicle's rear has a target that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- High-speed objects, such as fast-moving vehicles or sudden rear-approaching vehicles.
- The vehicle is reversing.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.

- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

WARNING

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment. Do not rely heavily on the warning issued by the RCW system. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.

WARNING

- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate safety measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back. The system gives a warning when it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, pedestrians or riders. The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-15 km/h.
- When the system gives a warning, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle, textual prompts, audible alarm and voice broadcast, and triggers target object rendering to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be afffected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory. The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no warning or delayed warning. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to

interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode, RCTA does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may be issued in too bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

- Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The operating speed range of the rear lateral impact braking system is 0-10 km/h.
- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory. The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow or heavy fog.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTB does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of mmWave radars, resulting in degraded system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated

WARNING

with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and make necessary response to danger in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Extended Driving Assist Function

Adaptive Front Light (AFL)

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance function that helps the driver use the high beams correctly in the dark. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzlling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function settings

- Enable or disable AFL in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL indicators*

AFL standby	AFL activated	AFL fault
		

On/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is 35 km/h ⩽ 140km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high

beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the AFL may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- The AFL system is an auxiliary light control function, but the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgment. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to contact a qualified after-sales maintenance personnel for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the AFL function.
- Activating high beam manually will suppress AFL function.

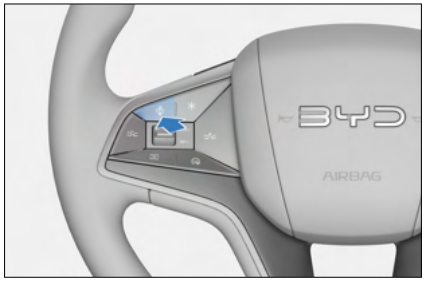
Around View Monitoring (AVM)

The around view monitor (AVM) system, also known as the 360-degree imaging system, provides real-time image information by seamlessly stitching images from four wide-angle cameras installed on the front, rear, left, and right sides of the vehicle (bird's-eye view). This helps the driver understand the blind spots around the vehicle and better navigate the ground-level blind zones.

Enabling AVM

Engaging manually

- To access the around view, press the button on the steering wheel.
- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed to show the rear view.
- Access vehicle view on infotainment touchscreen → .



D gear triggering

- With the infotainment touchscreen turned on, the AVM is automatically activated when the vehicle is shifted from Park to Reverse for the first time.

Radar triggering

- AVM is automatically activated when radars detect obstacles around the vhicle.

Turn signal triggring

- On the infotainment touchscreen, go to Sidebar → Triggring Settings → Low-speed steering linakge to enable or disable the turn signal trigger function.
- When the vehicle is in Drive and the speed is ⩽ 15 km/h, enabling the turn signals automatically triggers the AVM. When the speed is ⩾ 30 km/h, the AVM automatically exits.

Operating AVM

Around View Icons	Symbol Name
	AVM setting
	Parking radar switch
	3D button
	Dual view button
	Floating window button

Switching perspectives

- Tapping the front/back/right/left areas of the vehicle model to switch the displayed perspective.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a wide-angle perspective displayed in full screen.



Switching views

- Tap to switch between 2D dual view and 2D single view.
- 3D around view*: When the 3D button* in the left sidebar is selected, it will display a 3D panoramic view.

Radar displaying

- Tap the radar icon to enable or diable the radar display in AVM screen. When the radar display is enabled, the radar visually indicates the distance between the vehicle and obstacles on the screen, accompanied by audio alerts* to remind the driver of potential hazards and enhance driving safety.

Transparent around view

- Tap the vehicle model to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images. When the vehicle speed is ⩾ 30 km/h, the transparent around view is automatically disabled.

- In each power-on cycle, the image before last power-off is displayed on the AVM screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

AVM settings

- Tapping ⚙ on the sidebar to set vehicle body images and trigering ways, or restore default settings.

WARNING

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not fully extended, do not use the AVM system; when using the system for parking/driving, ensure that all the vehicle doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.

WARNING

- Cameras are installed above the front grille, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- The AVM system provides transparent AVM view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent AVM view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the

WARNING

vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Head-up Display (HUD)*

Head-up Display (HUD): The head-up display (HUD) function projects important information on the instrument cluster, including vehicle speed, navigation, ADAS, etc., into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of eyes.

How to Use

- The user can enable or disable the head-up display function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display** → **HUD**.
- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.



- Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
- Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 0 and 10. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.
- Angle adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.
- Mode setting: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
- Settings optional for display: safe driving assistance or navigation. They are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Driver Monitoring Systems*

Driver monitoring systems (DMS), including fatigue and distraction monitoring, is designed to monitor the driver's driving status with a camera and assess it. Based on the assessment, the system alerts the driver in a timely manner. The monitoring data will not be saved or uploaded to the server but instead will be deleted immediately after the assessment is complete.

How to Use

- The camera for driver monitoring assistance is mounted on the A-pillar

of the driver's side. Make sure the slide cover* is open and the camera is unobstructed before use. Otherwise, DMS may not function normally.



- When the ignition is ON, enable or disable the Driver Monitoring Systems function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Cabin Percetion**.
- When the function is disabled, the camera is monitoring normally, but does not send any reminder to the driver.

Fatigue Driving Warning

- When the vehicle speed meets the activation conditions and the fatigue driving reminder button is set to "ON", the system will detect driver fatigue (e.g., closed eyes or prolonged continuous driving) and promptly alert the driver to rest via intelligent voice prompts, the instrument cluster, and alert sounds.

Distracted Driving Alert

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, driver distraction warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction, for example, the sight deviates from the front for a long time, and there is no steering action or the turn signals are not turned on, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or through intelligent voice or an audible alarm.
- **Activation Conditions**
  - The vehicle speed reaches the set value.
  - DMS is activated.
  - The corresponding function location is set to "Enabled”;
  - Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, comply with all road laws and regulations, and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - The in-vehicle camera permission is not enabled.
  - DMS is disabled.
  - The camera is obstructed or the slide cover is not fully open.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.

- Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
- The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
- The driver wears a mask or something that covers the mouth.
- The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- The driver should pull over the vehicle as soon as possible when feeling tired.

Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The direct tire pressure monitoring system is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- Pressing the button on the steering wheel can access to select the tire pressure screen.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 85% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to stop the vehicle to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow, it is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise, vehicle damage or personal injuries may occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, reduce vehicle speed, and pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The tire pressure monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there is some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- If the tire pressure monitoring module is installed incorrectly, it will affect the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- If the vehicle is equipped with non-BYD approved electrical accessories, the tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed, do not misunderstand the disturbance as a tire pressure system failure.

CAUTION

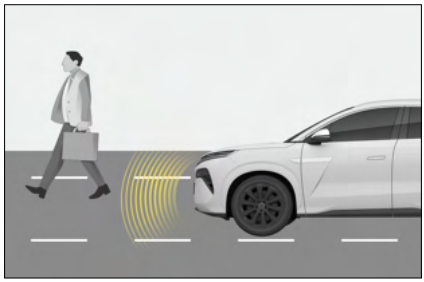
- When replacing wheel rims or spare tires* or performing tire rotations, the tire pressure system needs to be matched again. Please go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

System Function

The acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 km/h<V≤20 km/h.
  - The sound volume decreases with vehicle speed increase in the range of 20 km/h<V≤30 km/h.



  - At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.
- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced sound when reversing.
- Whether the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse, the alert sound will automatically stop when the engine starts.

Disabling/Enabling the System

- To turn on or off (not supported in some regions) the engine sound simulator, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen. The system is enabled by factory default. The engine sound simulator setting switch does not retain its state before power-off, and remains in the ON position after the vehicle is re-powered.

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in D gear and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)*

After the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP), as an auxiliary reminder function, is performed to detects life presence on the seat inside the vehicle. If life presence is detected, a reminder is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. Open any door to cancel the reminder.

Activation Conditions

- CPD is activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - Switch off the ignition.
  - The driver's door is opened and then closed when the vehicle is stationary.
  - All doors are closed.
  - CPD is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - CPD system has no fault.

How to Use

- To access the CPD setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Cabin Perception**. Four options are provided: OFF, ON, Standard, and Delay.
- The switch retains its previous setting when the vehicle is restarted.
- OFF: CPD function is disabled.
- Delay: the alarm starts in about 5 minutes.

System Response

Initial alarm

- When CPD enabled with standard alarm mode:
  - If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and

honking) starts within 10 seconds and will last for about 3 seconds.

- If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and unlocked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 3 seconds.

- When CPD enabled with delay alarm mode:
  - If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 3 seconds.

Escalated alarm

- If the initial alarm is not canceled,
  - an escalated alert (flashing lights and horn sounding) will be triggered approximately 80 seconds later and will last approximately 25 minutes.

Other system responses

- If the initial alarm is not canceled,
  - the A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

Alarm cancelling

- Methods to cancel the alarm is triggered:
  - Tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen to cancel the alarm. The setting will remain effective during the current power-off cycle (i.e., from the current power-off to the next power-on).
  - Unlock or open any door to cancel the alarm.

Message delivery

- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and SMS when the alarm is escalated.
- The user will receive messages in the BYD app when the other system responses start.
- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and SMS when the other system responses end.
- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and SMS when the fucntion exits abnormally.

WARNING

- The system notifies users with light flashing, honking, app message prompts, SMS, and A/C operation to reduce the harm to the presence in the vehicle. However, CPD is only an auxiliary system and may not reliably detect or issue reminders in all circumstances. The user must remain alarm at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any life presence has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further safety incident.

CAUTION

- CPD is only an auxiliary reminder system, and cannot ensure every alarm-raising when life presence is left in the vehicle. The user must remain alarm (especially for child) at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- The alarm may be given for adults, pets, or other lives detected.

CAUTION

- The alarm may be given for moving objects detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle remotely from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an escalated alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as anti-lock braking system (ABS), electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic emergency braking (AEB), comfort stop (CST), cooperative regenerative brake systems (CRBS) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System(TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the engine power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control(HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist(HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

When you engage the EPB, the CDP function starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the vehicle stops. The function stops working when the EPB is released.

Hill Descent Control(HDC)

- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort. To turn on or off the HDC function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Intelligent Assist** setting interface. The main function of HDC is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
  - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivate HDC:
  - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator turns off.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.

- You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Steering Assist Mode**.

- Comfort parking*
  - Comfort parking: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Comfort Parking**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 2-5 cm. Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Comfort control*
  - Comfort control: During acceleration and deceleration, the vehicle experiences pitch motion caused by load transfer. The function suppresses the vehicle pitch by coordinating the suspension damping and the brake end pressure, which improves the driving comfort.
  - Users can select three comfort control modes of "weak", "moderate" or "strong" by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

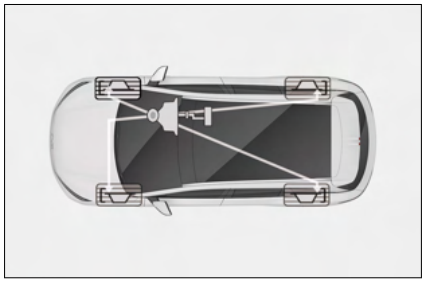
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the engine to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, tap the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **ESC OFF**. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If you press ESC OFF switch to turn off ESC while it is working, it completes the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (80 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- Restarting ESC system

- When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.

- ESC system start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (left front wheel brake connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is normal because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:

WARNING

- Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
- Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
- Bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as

CAUTION

waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System.....188
A/C System.....196
BYD App.....203
Storage.....204
Other Devices.....206

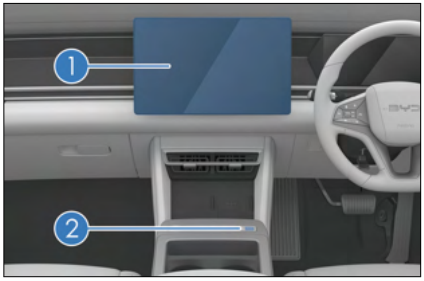
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as apps and Internet calls, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- Scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down.
- With the infotainment system on, press the scroll button to mute the system and go to the screen saver interface or turn off the screen (set the screen saver through in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → Audio Display → Screen). Press the scroll button again to unmute and turn on the screen.
- Press and hold the scroll button for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.

Reset to factory settings

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings by tapping ⚙ → System → Version→ Factory Reset.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes 2-5 minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen:
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Infotainment System

- A warning is displayed when the infotainment system starts for the first time. Tap Agree to enter the system.
- When the infotainment system is started, the screen is automatically displayed, containing status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.
- Status bar

  The top status bar displays the function status icons.

  Icons in the status bar include two types: operable* and display only.
- Shortcut menu

  Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. It includes convenient operations, brightness and volume adjustments, and scene mode* functionality modules.
- Navigation bar

  Long press the navigation bar to bring up the control menu and applications*. You can customize the navigation bar according to your needs.

  - : returns to the previous page or exits the program.
  - : returns to the homepage.

    Touch and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops base on preferences.
  - : goes to vehicle setting screen.
  - : Goes to the app list screen*.
  - : tap the button to split screen, and tap a second time to exit.
- Task management center*

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.
- Desktop widget

  The components on the desktop are customized by factory default, and users can add, delete or change the location of widgets according to their preferences.

REMINDER

- The first home screen widget is a fixed component and does not support replacement.

REMINDER

- When the infotainment system malfunctions, upload the fault information in "Practical Tools".
- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Gas Settings

Vehicle setting of the infotainment system mainly includes: Bluetooth, Network and Internet, Notifications, Personal Information and Account, Location, Privacy, Accessibility, Security, Apps, Voice Assistant, System Sync, and Google Features modules:

- Bluetooth: Manage Bluetooth device pairing and connection, supporting wireless audio transmission and peripheral control.
- Net and Internet: Configure Wi-Fi, mobile data, VPN, and hotspot sharing to optimize network connection status.
- Notification: Customize app notification priority, display mode, and do-not-disturb mode settings.

- Personal Information and Account: Sync or delete account data, manage cross-device login and cloud service permissions.
- Location: Control the location permission switch for apps and view recent location usage records.
- Privacy: Manage app permissions, advertising preferences, and access logs for sensitive data (such as camera/ microphone).
- Accessibility： Enable screen readers, subtitle magnification, and other assistive features to accommodate special needs interactions.
- Safety Set screen lock types, Google Play protection, and emergency safety event responses.
- Apps： View application storage usage, permission grant status, and default app allocation rules.
- Voice Assistant: Adjust the Google Assistant wake word, voice matching, and smart home integration.
- system * Operations include software updates, backup restoration, multi-device connectivity, and system-level power-saving strategies.
- Google： Manage account-associated services, such as search, maps, and ads.

Google Voice Assistant

Google Voice Assistant

The Google Assistant, integrated into the in-vehicle infotainment system, uses natural language processing technology to enable users to interact more naturally, helping them control various functions more conveniently, and supporting a wide range of music, podcasts, and other entertainment interactions.

- Vehicle owners can also activate the Google Assistant in three ways when the default voice assistant is set to Google Assistant:
  - Wake it up by saying "OK Google" or "Hey Google".
  - Press the voice button on the steering wheel briefly.
  - Tap the Google Assistant app icon.
- Vehicle owners can ask Google Assistant general questions, such as "what’ s on my calendar? "what's on my calendar"；"read my message"、"play some music"、"Navigate to Starbucks"、"turn on the heater" and voice interaction functions for communication, media, navigation, and vehicle control modules. The vechicle control system then performs the recognized instruction.
- If the current default voice assistant is not Google Assistant, the wake word and steering control button will not activate Google Assistant. Vehicle owners can select the desired default voice assistant by pressing and holding the voice icon or through settings → Assistant & Voice → Digital assistant app → Default digital assistant app.

Google Play

- Google Play is the official application store and digital content platform created by Google for Android devices, providing users with diversified digital services such as applications, games, e-books, movies and music. As one of the world's largest mobile application distribution platforms, it covers millions of applications and games, supporting users to enjoy one-stop entertainment, learning and life services, and is a core component of the Android ecosystem.

Scenario Mode

Users can slide down the infotainment touchscreen to open the "convenient" interface or use voice control to open/close the scene mode, realizing the linkage of vehicle control, triggering multiple vehicle settings, meeting the needs of family travel, entertainment, rest and other scenarios.

Nap Mode

- Mode activated: When you needs a short rest, activate the nap mode and set the duration from the drop-down menu on the infotainment touchscreen. Tap "OK" to activate the mode, and tap "End Now" to exit the mode.
- Alarm settings: There will be an alarm at the end of the nap time. Tap "Cancel" to end it. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm will delay for a period of time by default and ring again when the time is up.
- Mode effect: In the nap mode, the driver's seat is automatically lowered to the default position, the A/C is turned on, the vehicle is locked, and systems such as the windows and the panoramic sunroof are automatically closed. The infotainment touchscreen displays the nap mode interface, and the passenger screen, the instrument cluster screen, and other screens go off.

CAUTION

- Make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park before activating the nap mode.
- Please close all doors and the back door before entering the nap mode.

CAUTION

- Before entering the nap mode, please pay attention to the vehicle endurance to avoid inconvenience.
- After the vehicle stops safely, please observe the bottom of the vehicle to prevent the engine exhaust pipe from igniting flammable materials (such as hay, dead leaves, wheat straw, etc.);
- Do not turn on nap mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not take a nap in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- To prevent rear passengers from being pinched or items from being damaged, ensure that no passengers and items are on the rear seats before you take a nap.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the nap mode in some cases, such as when the vehicle is not in Park or is powered off, which is normal.

Camping Mode

- Mode activated: When camping outdoors, you can enable the camping mode by pulling down the profile options in the convenience bar of the central control screen or using voice.
- Alarm settings: Users can set the alarm clock in the camping mode. When the time arrives, the alarm clock will remind the user. Click "Close Alarm" to end the alarm. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm clock will extend a period of camping time by default, and the alarm clock will remind again after the time.
- Mode effect: After entering the camping mode, the windows, sunroof

and sunshade will be automatically closed, the infotainment touchscreen will play the camping dynamic effect selected by the user, and the rest of the screens in the vehicle will be closed. At the same time, the vehicle will automatically adjust the body posture to ensure that the body posture is flat. After the user locks the vehicle, the lights will be automatically turned off.

CAUTION

- Make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park before activating the camping mode;
- Before entering the camping mode, please pay attention to the vehicle endurance to avoid inconvenience.
- After the vehicle stops safely, please observe the bottom of the vehicle to prevent the engine exhaust pipe from igniting flammable materials (such as hay, dead leaves, wheat straw, etc.);
- Do not turn on camping mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not camp in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- The vehicle may automatically exit camping mode under certain conditions, such as air conditioning failure, low battery, or power-off. These scenarios are normal.

Baby Mode*

- Mode activated: When using the vehicle, you can enable or disbale the baby mode by pulling down the convenience bar of the infotainment touchscreen to enter the scenario mode selection or by voice.
- Mode effect: When the baby mode is activated, the following actions occur:The multimedia volume is reduced.The rear windows are closed.The child locks are activated.The sunshades are closed. The rear air conditioning control panel activates the child lock. The rear air conditioning screen displays a locked status. All air conditioning and seat functions become non-operational. The multimedia system randomly plays children-related music.

CAUTION

- Please close all doors and the back door before entering the baby mode.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle when baby mode is on.
- Children's music will not be played when the vehicle has no network or Kuwo music* is uninstalled.

Washing mode*

- Mode activated: You can enable the washing mode by pulling down the convenience bar of the infotainment touchscreen to enter the scenario mode selection or by voice before washing the vehicle.
- Mode effect: After the user enters the vehicle washing mode, the window and other systems will be automatically closed, the children lock will be automatically turned on, and the status of the relevant systems will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.
- When the user washes the car on the conveyor belt, he can click the "Automatic Vehicle Wash" button and enter the automatic car wash according to the operation prompt.

After entering the automatic vehicle wash, the outside rearview mirror will fold automatically and help the user to put the gear into N gear automatically.

CAUTION

- Please ensure that the vehicle speed is ⩽ 15km/h before entering the vehicle wash mode. If the vehicle speed is > 15km/h, the vehicle wash mode will automatically exit;
- After the user clicks the automatic vehicle wash button, please step on the brake and engage the D gear to enter the automatic vehicle wash mode;
- In order to ensure the safety of vehicle washing, do not leave the vehicle when the automatic vehicle washing is carried out on the conveyor belt.
- After washing the vehicle, users can directly shift gears to exit the wash mode.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: To open an application, select a function, press a key on the screen, or enter a character using the screen keys, simply tap with your finger.
- Dragging: To move an icon, thumbnail, or preview to a new location, hold and drag it to the desired location and release.
- Swiping: This can be done on the main page or the application interface.
- Double-tapping: zooms in an image or shows full screen. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

Bluetooth call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap Please connect Bluetooth to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap Contacts, Call log, and Missed calls, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

OTA Upgrade*

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest by tapping infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **System** → **Version** → **Version update**.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update immediately or schedule an update according to your use of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the upgrade.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with a stable network connection.
- Ensure the vehicle has a high SOC before starting the update.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the on-board diagnostics port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- During the update, vehicle functions are not available except the following: locking/unlocking with smart key or microswitch, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the update fails, try again. If it continues to fails, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

Intelligent Voice Assistant

- BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio/DAB*, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.
- When the default voice assistant is set to the BYD Assistant, vehicle owners can activate it in three ways: Saying the wake word "Hi, BYD"; Press the voice button 🎙 on the steering wheel briefly; Tap the icon on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Your voice commands can be recognized after system wake-up. Then, you can give the instructions like:" "Go home" (Need to set a quick location), "Play music", "Start DAB+", "Make a call (Need to access the contact list and connect to phone Bluetooth)", "Set the temperature to 23 degree", and "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver", etc. Intelligent voice assistant then performs the recognized instruction.
- If the current default voice assistant is not the BYD Voice Assistant, the wake word and steering control button will not activate the BYD Voice Assistant. Vehicle owners can select the desired default voice assistant by press and hold the voice icon or through Settings → Assistant & Voice → Digital Assistant App → Default Digital Assistant App page.

KaraOK*

- Press the microphone power button until the "Karaoke" lights up, and you can then start experiencing the Karaoke.

- Open the KaraOK App, start your karaoke experience, and in the KaraOK system interface, you can adjust the microphone volume, reverb, and select effects to customize your singing experience.
  - After entering the KaraOK App, click on the floating microphone icon or the microphone button (function key) to adjust the volume and reverb size in the BYD KaraOK system popup window. For a better KaraOK* experience, it is recommended to adjust the overall system volume of the vehicle to 25 or higher to achieve a better singing experience.
  - In the BYD Karaoke system popup, select the desired sound effect from the options including Studio, KTV, Concert Hall, and Original Sound. Click the corresponding sound effect button, and the microphone will automatically switch to the selected setting.

My Car*

"My car" function includes vehicle control. Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model* control.

- Shortcut control: Shortcut control can be achieved by the shortcut bar and the shortcut function of the card entrance at the bottom.
- 3D vehicle model control: Users can click the hotspot area to operate the vehicle control. It controls sunroof, sunshade, windows, and the tailgate*, etc. The vehicle control function is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.
- Body color change: You can switch the body color by tapping the corresponding icon.
- Vehicle control customization: Press More to view all shortcut functions, and press and hold the function icon to adjust its position in accordance with using frequency. The vehicle control function is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

REMINDER

- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Other Applications

Customization app—Google map

- The map supports location, search, route planning, navigation, and other functions.
- To better suit driving usage scenarios, most of the interactive controls are on the right side of the map screen. You can find the nearby charging piles, parking lots, and other interested places easily.

External Applications

This infotainment system is an Android-based system that supports the installation of external apps.

- Installing external apps:
  1. Download the intended app.
  2. Tap the app file, and allow the App installation to install it.
  3. The installed app is in the app list. Tap to use it.

CAUTION

- Applications that are not officially certified may not work properly.

CAUTION

- Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system unusable. Please use this function with caution.

- Uninstalling external apps:

  1. The installed apps could be found in infotainment touchscreen → APP Center → Settings → Apps. Select the intended app to uninstall.
  2. Tap **Uninstall** and confirm.

CAUTION

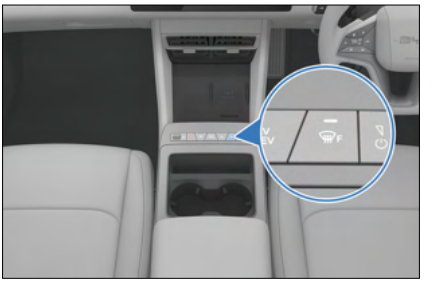
- The applications on the infotainment system cannot be downloaded.

A/C System

A/C Panel

Front A/C Panel

- Front windshield defroster



Rear A/C Panel*



1	Second-row left seat ventilation button*	10	Rear A/C air distribution button
2	Second-row seat left vent/ heating gear display*	11	Automatic locking of rear air conditioning screen*
3	Second-row left seat heating button*	12	Rear A/C auto mode
4	Rear A/C temperature +	13	Rear A/C fan speed +
5	Rear A/C temperature display	14	Display of rear air conditioner volume gear
6	Rear A/C temperature -	15	Rear A/C fan speed -
7	Rear A/C ON/OFF	16	Second-row right seat ventilation button*
8	Rear A/C control icon	17	Second-row seat right vent/heating gear display*
9	Rear A/C air distribution screen	18	Second-row right seat heating button*

A/C Operation Interface

Front A/C Operation Interface



1	Front A/C controls	10	Max cooling
2	Rear A/C controls*	11	A/C setting

3 Front A/C ON/OFF

4 A/C auto mode

5 Ventilation

6 Cooling

7 Circulation mode

8 Defroster for rear windshield & side mirrors

9 Front windshield defroster

12 Driver's temperature control

13 Front A/C airflow mode adjustment button

14 Front passenger's temperature control

15 Synchronization

16 Front fan speed adjustment

Rear A/C Interface*



1 Rear A/C operation interface

2 Rear A/C ON/OFF

3 Rear A/C auto mode

4 Rear A/C lock

5 Rear air conditioner temperature control

6 Rear airflow mode adjustment button

7 Resr fan speed control

Function Definition

Auto mode

- After tapping this button, the compressor status, fan speed and air distribution can be adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode

except for those that have been operated.

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Cooling

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button and then is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time. is displayed, and the air inlet mode is fresh air mode.

REMINDER

- When the "automatic recirculation when parking" function is enabled, to ensure air quality in the vehicle and prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the vehicle, the recirculation mode is switched on automatically after you shift into "P".

Ventilation

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature control

- Slide downward to increase the temperature. Slide upward to decrease the temperature.
- When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield, The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear window & side mirrors*

- Tap this button to heat up and defrost the rear windshield and side mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors or the rear windshield when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces are hot.

⚠ CAUTION

- Using this function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

Fan speed control

- Tap the chosen position. The more bars illuminated, the faster the fan speed.

Synchronization

- Tap this button, the button lights up activating the linked mode for the driver's and front passenger's temperature settings.
- Tap this button again to switch from linked mode to individual mode.
  - Individual mode: When the Sync button if off, the temperature of the driver's side and front passenger's side can be set separately.
  - Linked mode: When the Sync button if on, adjust the driver side and front passenger side set temperature at the same time by the driver side temperature control.
- When the front passenger's temperature control is operated in relative mode, the A/C system will automatically switch to individual mode.

Automatic locking of rear air conditioning screen*

- By default, if there is no operation on the air conditioning screen for 8 seconds, the rear air conditioning screen will automatically lock and display this icon, at which point the rear air conditioning panel buttons will be unoperable.
  - The automatic lock time for the rear air conditioning screen can be set via the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Sound Display** → **Screen** → **Rear Air Conditioning Screen Auto Lock Settings**.
- Tap the rear air conditioning screen unlock icon to unlock the rear air conditioning screen and hide the icon. At this point, the rear air conditioning panel buttons become operable.

Rear A/C auto mode*

- Tap this button to automatically adjust the rear A/C fan speed and air distribution, with the indicator changes from white to blue. (The front AC needs to be on during cooling)
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

Rear A/C controls*

- Enable the air conditioning lock on the rea rA/C interface, and the interface will display the locked state. At this time, the related AC functions can not be operated but the vetilation and heating functiongs could be adjusted.
- Disable the air conditioning lock on the rear A/C interface. The interface shows the unlocked state, and the icon is not displayed. Air conditioning functions can be operated.
- After starting Baby Mode on the infotainment touchscreen, the rear A/C interface will be locked. All functions of the A/C system and seats will be disabled.

Second-row left/right seat ventilation button*

- Tap the left and right seat ventilation controls of the second-row seats to select the three ventilation levels.

Second-row left/right seat heating button*

- Tap the left and right seat heating controls of the second-row seats to select the three heating levels of the cushion.

Air distribution

- Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

➡ : Air flows to the face level.

⬇ : Air flows to the foot level.

: Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open. to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- To cool down quickly, activate the maximum cooling control mode to enable the best A/C cooling state. This makes the interior environment comfortable quickly.
- If the A/C effect does not achieve expectations, it is recommended to activate auto mode. In this mode, A/C adjusts to the appropriate ventilation temperature, mode and fan speed for comfort needs of passengers.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, by leafs or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- It is recommended to keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage, which helps reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for cabin quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle, resulting in mold on the

REMINDER

surface of the wet evaporator surface and odor after long-term fermentation.

- How to prevent and reduce A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the A/C filter regularly.
  - Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the odor does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, it is normal that the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. No need to worry about it. This is to dry the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator to prevent odor caused by mold fermentation.

A/C Settings

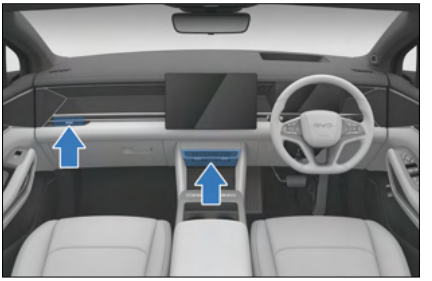
To access the A/C setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen→ .

- Auto A/C mode*
  - Two options are available: Economical and Comfort.
- Remote A/C schedule
  - Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.
- Automatic purification
  - Tap this button to enable auto purification function.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto internal circulation upon parking *
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto air recirculation in tunnels *
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button again to disable it.
- Fan speed reduction during calls
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.

A/C Vents

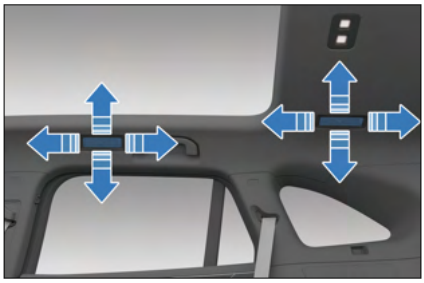
Front Vents

- Toggle the slat up or down to adjust the outlet angle of air flow.
- Slide the slat left or right to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.



Roof Vents*

- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle or close the vent.



BYD App

About BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap Sign up to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap Send email to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation, see ***P203*** for details.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management

Tap **My Account** to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- **Account and Security**: recovers or changes your password.
- **Settings**: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- **About Us**: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

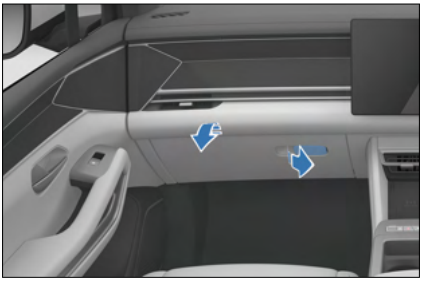
Door Bins

There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



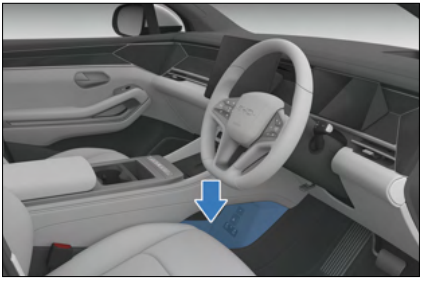
Glove Box

- Pull to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



Center Console Storage Compartment

- The center console storage compartment can be used for storage of small items.



Center Console Cubby

- Simply lift the center armrest cover directly upwards to open the central armrest box.



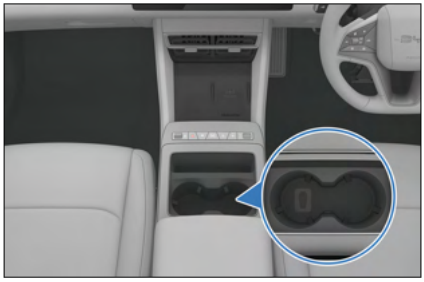
REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

Cup Holders

Front Seat Cup Holder

- The front seat cup holder is located inside the auxiliary dashboard.



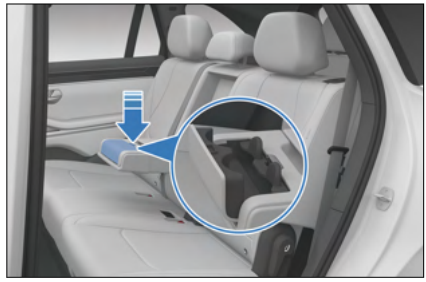
Second-Row Cup Holder

- The second-row cup holder is located inside the second-row seat armrest.

1. Flip second row armrest adjustment.

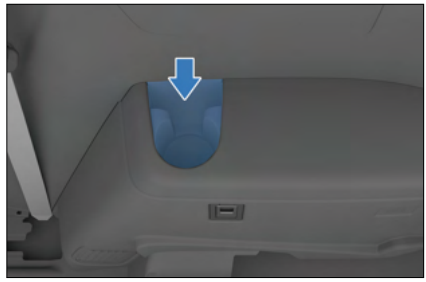


2. Tap the cup holder cover to let it open automatically.



Third Row Seat Cup Holder*

- The third-row cup holders are located on both sides of the third-row seats.



WARNING

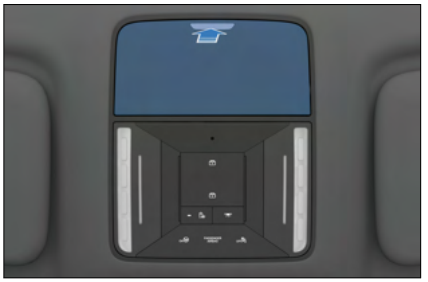
- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.

WARNING

- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

Glasses Case

Press the lid of the case to open it.



Seatback Pockets

There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines and newspapers. (The seatback pockets on your actual vehicle may differ.)

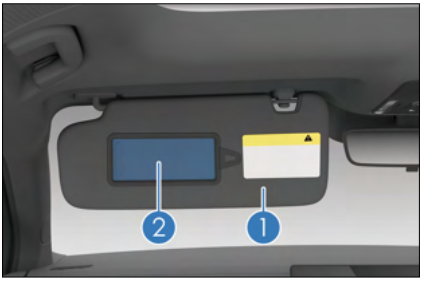


Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

Second Row Clothes Hooks

- The clothes hooks are located on both sides of the upper parts of the B pillars.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects on the clothes hooks to avoid personal injury or hook damage.
- Please hang clothes directly on the hook. Do not hang other items on the hook (like hangers or sharp objects). These items may injure the occupants when the side curtain airbags deploy, or may prevent such airbags from fully deploying.

USB Ports

Front-Row USB Ports

- Front-row USB ports are located at the hollowed-out part below the center console.

  ① Type-C charge port

  ② Type-C data transmission port



CAUTION

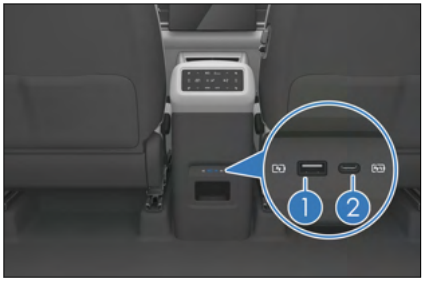
- It is recommended to use USB storage devices of 8-128 G with FAT32, ExFAT or NTFS format.
- Do not use special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear USB ports are located behind the cubby box.

  ① Type-A charge port

  ② Type-C fast charge port



- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

On-board Power Supply

- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition has been switched on. Lift the cover to use it.

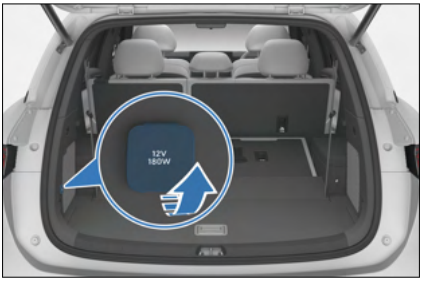
Front 12V Power Outlet

It is located in the center console cubby.



Rear row 12V Power Outlet

It is located in the trunk. The position of the power supply on your vehicle may differ.



CAUTION

- In order to prevent the fuse from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed the total load of the vehicle 12V/180 W.
- To prevent the low-voltage battery from exhausting its power, do not use the 12V auxiliary power supply for a long time when the ignition is off.
- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as electrical failure may result.

Wireless Phone Charger

- The wireless phone charging area is located at the front of the center console cubby. After starting the vehicle, put the phone at the wireless charger area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment screen.
- To select or unselect the Wireless Charger option, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.



- The wireless phone charging function only works with Qi-certified phones.
- The charger uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to the phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.

CAUTION

- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charging area).
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as bank cards and NFC key card*, do not place them between the phone case and the phone during charging.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- You can enable or disable wireless charging on the infotainment touchscreen.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and a warning text "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone’ s manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.

REMINDER

- Some phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

Cargo Cover

- The cargo cover is used for covering the lugguage to protect privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- The cargo cover is stored in tool box located in the midlle of the trunk.

Installing cargo cover

1. Flipping and lowering the third-row seatbacks as per instruction in ***P77***.
2. Australia/New Zealand
3. Align the two ends of the cargo cover with the caps on the both C-pillar panels, and then insert them.
4. Pull out the cargo cover along the guide rail and hang it on the hooks of the trunk lid.

Removing cargo cover

- Do the reverse to remove the cover.

WARNING

- When opening or closing the cargo cover, you need to manually and slowly clamp the cover edge strip onto the fixing positions.
- When installing the cargo cover, make sure that it is installed securely.
- Do not place any objects on the cargo cover.
- Never allow a child to climb onto the cargo cover, otherwise, damage to the cargo cover, or

WARNING

even injury/death to the child, can happen.

06 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 214
Regular Maintenance.....219
Self-Maintenance.....225

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to reduce failures, ensuring stable driving and safe, economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times and are to be performed according to the specified time intervals.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as A/C, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Plan Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - Within 8 km, repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

First maintenance:

The vehicle must be maintained at 6 months or 3,500 km (HEV mileage) for the first time, whichever comes first.

First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.

Routine maintenance:

Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance: After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Chassis screws	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake pedal and EPB switch*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Ball pin and boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check tire wear	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary; Under severe working conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials or corrosion on connections between the EPS ECU and motor*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve, thermal insulation cotton, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Fasteners such as high-voltage distribution box and DC charging distribution box	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Deformation of or oil stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
HEPA filter	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; in case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in a timely manner and replace the A/C filter when necessary

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Transmission filter cover	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle glass glue	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Maintenance of other items: Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
High-voltage battery pack sealing	Test every two years or 40,000 km and replace the breather valve if necessary
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant (turbocharged engine)	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance every 2 years or 40,000 km.
EHS special gear oil	Check the amount of EHS gear oil during maintenance. Replace the oil every four years or 60,000 km
Inspect and replace the gear oil in the rear drive electric assembly.*	Check rear drive electric assembly gear oil type during maintenance every four years or 60,000km.
Battery pack capacity	Test and calibrate capacity every six months or 72,000 km.

Engine Maintenance: Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter (turbocharged engine)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Gasoline detergent (turbocharged engine)*	Add every 12 months or 10,000 km except the first maintenance
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 35,000 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Fuel filter	Replace at 18 months or 15,000 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 15,000 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace if necessary
Dust filter of charcoal canister (when DMTL equipped)*	Replace every two years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent fuel gun auto shut-off during refueling

REMINDER

- A bottle (180 mL/bottle) of gasoline detergent should be added for the turbocharged engine each time after the first maintenance.
- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt displays on the instrument cluster or the fuel indicator turns yellow.
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km, whichever comes first) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

REMINDER

- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle. The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (less than 15 minutes) in HEV mode or often

REMINDER

creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Comment

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- In particular, in cold environments, it is recommended to perform maintenance at half the usual mileage (only changing the oil and oil filter), i.e., every 5,000 km (for HEV mileage) or every 6 months.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
  - Driving in cold weather.
  - Frequent and sudden braking.
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer.
  - Use as a taxi.
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Frequent overloading.
- After the replacement of a new engine by the after-sales service, the first maintenance should be carried out at 5000 km (HEV mileage) or 6 months, whichever comes early.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance schedule for planned maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or repair as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
  - Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal or clutch pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
  - Motor coolant temperature remains high.
  - Battery capacity decreases significantly.
  - High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.
  - "Please check the engine system" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the engine compartment.
  - The engine leaks oil or water.
  - The vehicle exhausts blue smoke or thick black smoke.
  - A/C system fails to blow cold or hot air during refrigeration or heating.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.

- If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.

- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle’ s plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer

or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:

- Driving along the coast.
- Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
- Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
- Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
- Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
- The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
- After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, enable the washing mode* and ensure all doors, hood, trunk, sunroof*, and access panels are closed.
- Do not open the charge port door or fuel door to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing vehicle with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
  - The distance between the high-pressure water jet nozzle and the vehicle surface being cleaned should be greater than 30 cm.
  - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern for the high-pressure washer (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spary).
  - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.

CAUTION

- Comply with the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and its components.
- Do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting and even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated vehicle wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

CAUTION

- Disabling AVH function before using the automated wash equipment to wash the vehicle.
- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard and floor, or into nearby electrical components when washing the vehicle, as these may cause malfunctions.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor in case it causes corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a high-quality foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.

- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts and their anchorages for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

WARNING

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door checks regularly. If the check lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Vehicle Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, vehicle speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, acid or

CAUTION

alkali, as these will cause discoloration.

- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Leather

- Please park the vehicle in a shaded area to avoid direct sunlight, which can cause the wood to fade and dry out.
- Please maintain appropriate humidity levels in the vehicle to avoid excessive dryness or moisture, which can cause real wood trim to warp or mold.
- Dust on the real wood trim can be gently wiped with a dry cotton cloth to avoid scratching the wood grain.

CAUTION

- Avoid using hot water, disinfectants, alcohol, acid-base solutions, and other organic solvents that may damage the real wood trim. If any contamination occurs, immediately wipe it clean with a paper towel or dry cloth to minimize chemical damage to the real wood.
- Do not use plastic tape or other adhesive films to cover the real wood trim surface, as this may damage the surface coating.
- Do not use hard cloth or sharp objects to wipe or scratch the real wood trim, as this may damage the surface coating.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If any brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.

CAUTION

- If the engine is very hot, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cover or remove the water pump to prevent burns.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Self-check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator expansion tank should be checked monthly.
- Windshield washer fluid: The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked more often.
- Windshield wiper: Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.

- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) — Check if the electronic parking function is working properly.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires: Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Lights

Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are in a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

WARNING

- The headlight bulb becomes very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the surface of the bulb glass cause the bulb to overheat and break.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings.

REMINDER

In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.

- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

Panoramic Canopy Maintenance*

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce canopy sealing performance.
- Clean the rails on both sides and the front channels frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking drainage holes, which could result in poor drainage of the canopy.
- When washing the vehicle, make sure that the high-pressure water jets are at a sufficient distance from the vehicle, and do not aim them directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting and even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Add fuel.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material" such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening and Closing the Hood

Opening the Hood

1. Shift gear to "P" or "N" and enable the EPB, then pull the handle on the right under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.



2. Lifting the hood over the balance position and letting go will allow the hood to spring to the maximum angle.

Closing the Hood

1. Lower the hood past the balance position, then press it down slightly and release to close it.
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

WARNING

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood.
- Do not close the hood with a single hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the hood.

WARNING

- Do not press the front edge of the hood to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Engine Maintenance

Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine and exits until the carbon tank load meets the requirements.

Engine Oil

- Be sure to use the correct engine oil specification.
- Be sure to check the motor oil specifications on the packaging container when purchasing, the specifications must conform to the vehicle use.

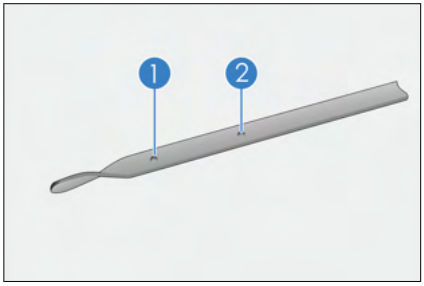
Recommended motor oil

- Motor oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality and purified motor oil should be preferred. BYD strongly suggests you to use the original engine oil.
- Motor oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather and road conditions. The new engine may have a higher fuel consumption rate.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine to the normal operating temperature, and then stop the engine.

2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and condition, and check whether the level is between ① and ②. Fill or replace motor oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back



- When the low oil pressure warning lamp is on, add motor oil in time.

WARNING

- Be careful not to spill the motor oil on vehicle components.
- Oil, engine components and the exhaust system are high-temperature components that can cause burns. Be careful and wear protective garment when working in the engine compartment.
- Long-term exposure to or frequent contact with used motor oil can cause skin diseases. When this kind of oil sticks to the skin, it can be washed with soapy water and clean water.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the OK indicator stays on, the working mode is EV, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, manually switch from Park to Neutral.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking brake is engaged. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

Fuel filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the travel time and mileage specified in the maintenance schedule.

- When the fuel is dirty or contaminated, it is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 10,000 km or six months, as the filter is more likely to be blocked.
- It is recommended to replace the fuel filter at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because there is pressure in the fuel system, if all the oil lines are not properly handled, the fuel may spill out and cause danger.
- If you have used more than one barrel of impure fuel, the filter should be changed earlier.
- If the filter is blocked by dirt, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or replacement of the filter.

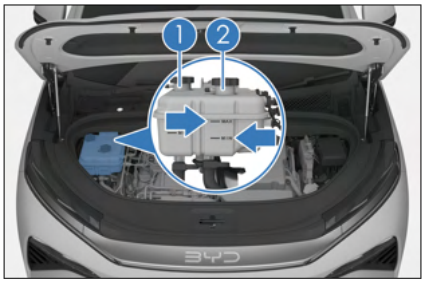
Cooling System

① Engine coolant expansion tank

② Motor controller coolant expansion tank

- There are the maximum (MAX) and minimum (MIN) lines in the coolant expansion tank①②. The liquid level in the coolant expansion tank is required

to be between theMaximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) lines.



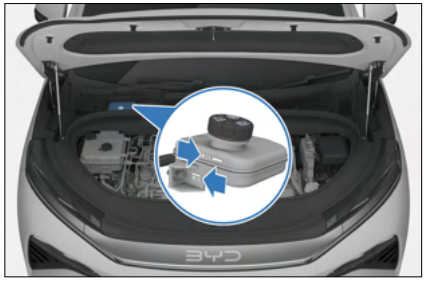
- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.
- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original. Do not add any admixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

REMINDER

- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the coolant expansion tank cap, make sure that the engine, motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, expansion tank cap and radiator are all cooled down.
- Do not open the top cover of the under-hood PDB when adding the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with professional tools to prevent the liquid from flowing into the PDB.

Braking System

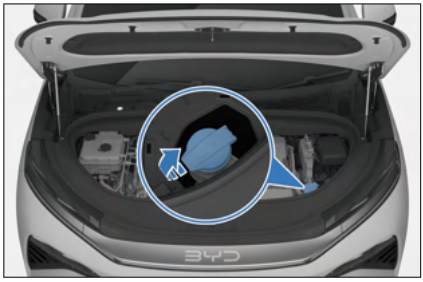
- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.



- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.

Washer system

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.



- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.
- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washing fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special

windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.

- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Wiper Blades Maintenance

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. On infotainment touchscreen, go to ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** to enable front/rear wiper maintenance. The wipers rotate out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tires

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure gauge. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

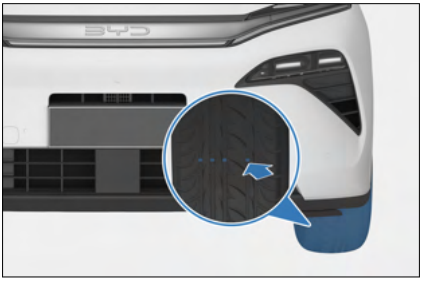
REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tires can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.



- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- After installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminum rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers to keep balance.

Tire Rotation

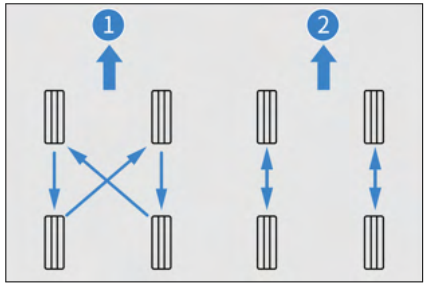
- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 10,000 km) check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread and rotate the tires and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Directional tires and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation.
- Tire rotation is as shown:

  ① Non-directional tires and wheels

  ② Directional tires and wheels.



Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for replacement of original tires.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorized dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle performance and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading.

- The under-hood PDB is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard fuse box is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The positive fuse box is under the front passenger's seat and above the low-voltage battery.
- The rear compartment fuse box* is located on the left side of the trunk.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

CAUTION

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to

CAUTION

replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

- If a fuse blows, it is recommended to check or replace the fuse at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....240

When Faults Occur

Reflective vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit.
- In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

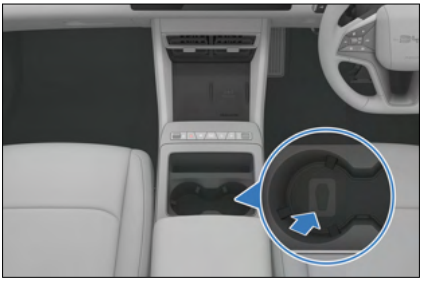
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming the anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign on the auxiliary dashboard.
3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.



If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If the vehicle experiences a fault and the instrument panel displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service center," immediately pull over to a safe location and contact a BYD Auto Authorized Service Center for assistance.

If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct procedures (see ***P122***) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the key checked by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If all keys are unusable, there may be a fault with the keys or the smart key system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see the response of the vehicle or the instrument cluster.
2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the starter motor cranks the engine at normal speed but the engine will not start:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Starting an Engine with Oil Spillage

- If the engine fails to start, repeatedly attempting to start it may lead to fuel leakage.
- If engine hydrolock occurs, you can manually perform the following steps:

  1. When the OK indicator stays on, the working mode is EV, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, manually switch from Park to Neutral.
  2. Confirm that the electronic parking brake is engaged. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

- If the engine has been started for five seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the engine fails to start continuously, and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, it is recommended not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning Light.
- Try to start the engine again.

If the Engine Is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is

overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, press the "P" button and ensure the EPB is engaged. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to wait for the engine coolant to cool down to the normal range of temperature before opening the expansion tank. While the engine is running, add coolant to the upper scale mark, tighten the cap, and then start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal range, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

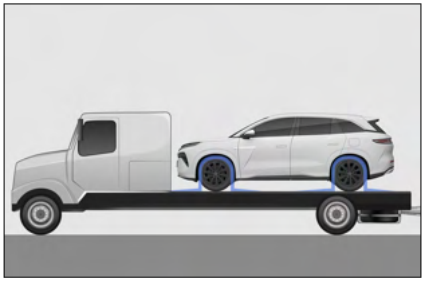
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

CAUTION

- Do not allow other vehicles to pull your car with only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



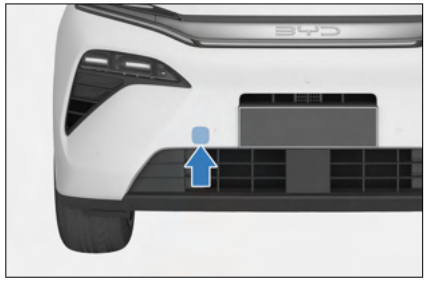
CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

- The tow eye cover is at the lower right corner of the front bumper, with the installation position shown in the diagram.

1. Press the triangular indicator position on the traction hook cover to open it.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, it is recommended to call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency rescue situations where the vehicle needs to be towed, observe the following to avoid vehicle damage or personal injuries.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral; the tow speed must be no more than 5 km/h.
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than four meters but less than ten meters.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.
  - When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow

force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.

- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centered vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Ensure the vehicle is in "P" (Park) gear and the electronic parking brake is engaged.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of

CAUTION

driving with flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

- In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap.
- In-vehicle tools are listed below:

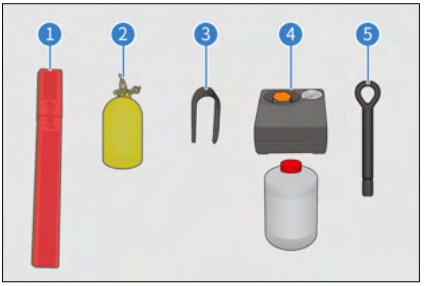
  ① Warning triangle

  ② Reflective vest

  ③ Lug nut cover removal clamp

  ④ Tire repair kit

  ⑤ Tow eye



CAUTION

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.
- After using the vehicle tools, return them to their original position to prevent loss or accidents.

Placing the warning triangle

WARNING

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly in accordance with local regulations. The red side of the should face the oncoming traffic from behind to warn rear vehicles and prevent potential hazards.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tire Repair Kit

- The tire repair kit is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service center, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tire is not deflated.
- The tire repair kit is in the trunk and can be taken out from the interior trim panel.
- The tire repair kit includes: sealant, inflator, and adhesive sticker with marked maximum allowable speed and instructions.

WARNING

- The tire repair kit is only suitable for minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, tire puncture sealant kit is prohibited.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, and seek medical attention immediately.

How to Use

- Refer to labels on the inflator for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12 V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the

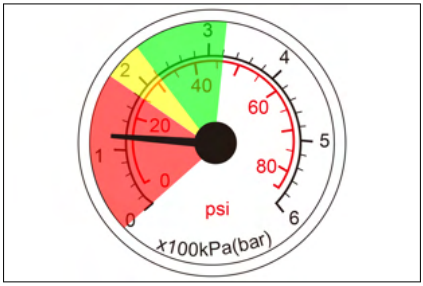
inflator hose into the tire along with air.



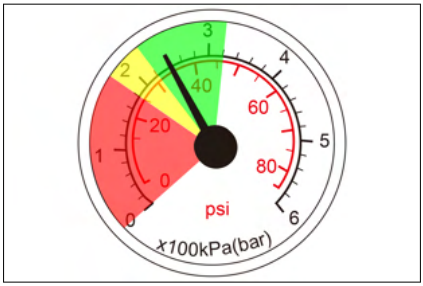
WARNING

- Make sure the inflator switch is off when you plugging the power supply into the 12V socket in the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.
- Before using the power plug, make sure that its voltage and power do not exceed the limits marked on the backup power supply. Exceeding these limits poses a safety hazard.
- When starting the vehicle, it should be positioned outdoors or in a well-ventilated area (e.g., a building with proper ventilation). Running the engine in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space can cause carbon monoxide poisoning, leading to suffocation.

- Observe the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
- If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



- If the tire pressure reaches between 180 and 320 kPa (green and yellow areas shown in the figure), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tire sealant is evenly distributed within the tire.



- Pull over the vehicle and check the tire pressure on the instrument cluster.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa, drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 130 and 220 kPa, repeat the process to fill the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- Using tire repair kit on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tire sealant has been used.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Abide by the maximum vehicle speed limit of 80 km/h. Do not continue driving if any strong vibration, driving instability, or noise occurs while the vehicle is running.
- When the tire sealant is about to expire (see the label on the canister for exact date), replace it with a new one.
- After using the tire repair kit, it is recommended to purchase new tire sealant at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

08 TECHNICAL DATA

Data..... 250
Information..... 255
Declarations of Conformity..... 258

Data

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	5040
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1996
Height (mm)	1760
Wheelbase (mm)	2950
Front track (mm)	1716
Rear track (mm)	1720
Front overhang (mm)	980
Rear overhang (mm)	1110
Approach angle (°)	20
Departure angle (°)	With trailer hitch euipped: 11.8 ° Without trailer hitch 21 °

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	DMI	DMP
Curb weight (kg)	2315	2580
Front axle load (kg)	1285	1355
Rear axle load (kg)	1030	1225
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	2970	3265
Front axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg)	1420	1495
Rear axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg)	1550	1770
Number of occupants (persons)	7	7

Engine

Item	Parameter
Engine model	BYD472ZQB
Engine type	In-cylinder direct injection, inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, spark-ignition, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft
Displacement (L)	1.498
Rated power (kW/rpm)	115/5500
Max. net engine power (kW/rpm)	110/5550
Maximum torque (N·m/rpm)	225/(2500-4500)
Emission standard	Euro 5 emission standard

Drive motor

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	DMI	DMP
Model	TZ210XYD	Front-wheel drive: TZ210XYD Rear control module: TZ200XSAE
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Front-wheel drive	Intelligent 4WD
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	90/6600/130	Front-wheel drive: 90/6600/130 Rear control module: 70/5306/140
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	200/20000/315	Front-wheel drive: 200/20000/315 Rear control module: 200/18400/360

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter	
Model	DMI	DMP

Item	Parameter	
Fuel consumption L/100km (NEDC)	5.3	6.3
Maximum design speed (km/h)	200	200
Maximum gradeability (%)	⩾50	⩾30

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter	
Model	DMI	DMP
Tire specification	255/50 R20	265/45 R21
Tire pressure (kPa)	270	290
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	<10	<10

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.2±0.75
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.3±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	8±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	6±0.75
Rear camber (°)	-0.5±0.75
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.16±0.16

Braking system

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	DMI	DMP
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1–5	1–5
Front brake disc standard thickness (mm)	30	32

Item	Parameter	
Front brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	28	30
Rear brake disc standard thickness (mm)	25	25
Rear brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	23	23
Front friction plate standard thickness (mm)	11	11
Front friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	2.5	2.5
Rear friction plate standard thickness (mm)	6.5	7
Rear friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	2.5	2.5

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	DMI	DMP
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	54	78.4

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seat (seat cushion depth measured)	70 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	23 °
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	Design position: 16° forward and 73.5° backward; slide rail: 190mm forward and 70mm backward; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Forward and backward moving spaces for second-row seats (cushion depth measured)	80 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke

Item	Parameter
Seatback angle of the second-row seats (cushion depth measured)	25 °
Normal service conditions of the second-row seats	8° forward and 12° backward from the designed position, forward 110 mm and backward 80 mm on the horizontal guide rail
Forward and backward moving spaces for third-row seat (seat cushion depth measured)	No slide rail
Seatback angle of the third-row seats (cushion depth measured)	21 °
Normal service conditions of the third-row seatbacks	6° backward and 2° forward from the designed position. When reclined forward, it forms a 4° angle with the horizontal. No slide rails are included.

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter
BYD472ZQB engine oil type	SP 0W-16
BYD472ZQB Engine oil amount (L)	4
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	3.2±0.1
Rear wheel drive transmission* gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
Rear drive gear transmission* oil amount (L)	1.3±0.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6/DOT4/HYDRA ULIC404
Brake fluid amount (mL)	Within 0-5 mm around the MAX mark
Engine coolant type	Glycol organic acid coolant: Antifreeze freezing point: -40°C (cold-resistant)
Engine coolant amount (L)	8.5±0.5
Motor coolant type	Glycol organic acid coolant: Antifreeze freezing point: -40°C (cold-resistant)
Motor coolant amount (L)	4.7±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

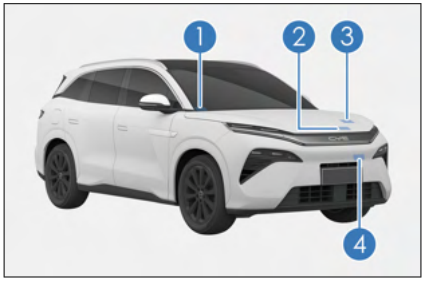
Positions of attached VIN:

① On the lower right corner of the windshield pillar dashboard

② On the front hood inner panel

③ On the side of the front transmission

④ On the front bumper beam

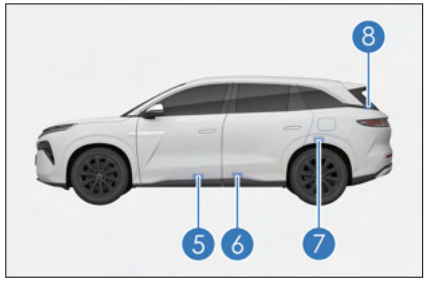


⑤ On the lower part of the left door inner panel

⑥ On the inner side of the left rear door threshold.

⑦ On the left rear wheel envelope

⑧ Under the inner panel of the trunk lid



Position of engraved VIN:

VIN is engraved on under driver's seat. After connecting the VDS, the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



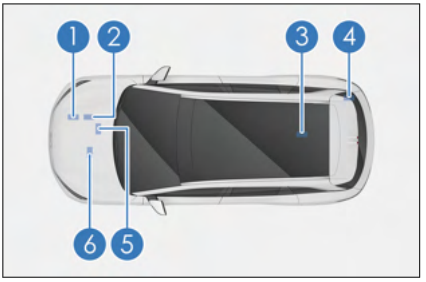
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of the front drive motor are attached on the inner panel of the hood.

② The model and serial number of the engine are attached on the engine intercooler.

③ The model and serial number of rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing*.

④ The model and serial number label of the rear drive motor is attached to the right side of the inner panel of the trunk lid.

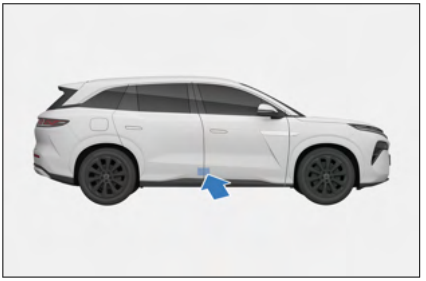


⑤ The model and serial number of the engine are engraved on the cylinder of the engine

⑥ The model and serial number of front drive motor are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

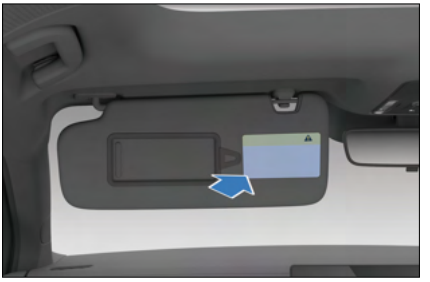
Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar.



Warning Labels

The airbag warning label is printed on the left sun visor.



The tire pressure label is attached below the right B-pillar lock ring.



The refrigerant refill and cooling fan labels are attached on both sides of the hood lock ring.



The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.



The charging indication & reminding label is attached to the inner side of the charge port door.



The low-voltage maintenance switch label is attached on the hood inner panel.



Warnings on Strut Mechanisms

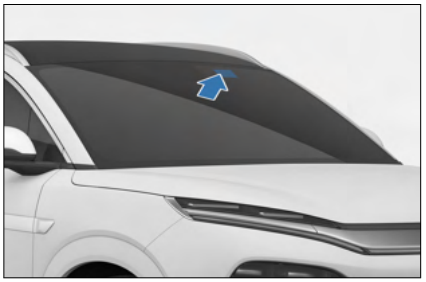
The strut mechanism of this vehicle contains high-pressure gas and is potentially dangerous. Do not disassemble it yourself. The warnings on the product have the following meanings:

Symbol	Symbol Name
	WARNING
	Pressurized cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual
	No flame
	No user repairing
	No discarding (Note: Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for recycling)

	No hand cranking
	No steping on

Transponder Mounting

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper left of the front windshield.



REMINDER

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Smart Key

	Uzbekistan Model: D1-92
	EU countries Model: D1-92
	Brazil Model: D1-92

	This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.
Corner MmWave Radar	
CE	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2021.08.0001
	Australia/New Zealand According to the Australian Radiocommunication standards, product type can be approved by self-declaration and no official type approval number is granted. There is a mutually recognized mark of compliance between Australia and New Zealand, which means RCM is also applicable in New Zealand.
TCR: XXXXX	Cambodia Certificate ID: RF-TA-2022-0803
ANATEL 13120-22-14807	Brazil Certificate ID: Versys 3008
CONATEL COMISION NACIONAL DE TELECOMUNICACIONES	Paraguay Certificate ID: 2022-01-I-0065
E24 10R-06 XXXX	EU R10 Certificate ID: E1*10R06/03*10307*01

Front MmWave Radars Certification

CE	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2022.01.0005
	Australia/New Zealand According to the Australian Radiocommunication standards, product type can be approved by self-declaration and no official type approval number is granted. There is a mutually recognized mark of compliance between Australia and New Zealand, which means RCM is also applicable in New Zealand.
ANATEL 13120-22-14807	Brazil Certificate ID: Versys 3163
E24 10R-06 XXXX	EU R10 Certificate ID: E1*10R06/03*10232*01
IFETEL: XXXXX	Mexico Certificate ID: IFT/223/UCS/3391/2023

Tire Pressure Monitoring Module

	Australia/New Zealand Certificate ID: SZCR230600177901/ SZCR230600177903/SZCR230600177904
ANATEL 13120-22-14807	Brazil Certificate ID: 08529-24-13003
TDRA	The United Arab Emirates Certificate ID: ER30729/24

Radio Frequency Statement

CE	The vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cnprod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.
PTA	Pakistan Certificate ID: 9.758/2024

Component	Frequency	Maximum Power
NFC device	13.56MHZ	1W
On-boartd Bluetooth	2400–2483.5 MHz	8dBm
WIFI hotspot	2402-2482MHz	19.5dBm@2.4
	5150-5825MHz	16dBm@5.8
Network (4G)	820-2700MHz	23dBm
FM radio broadcasting	64-108MHz	/
GPS module	1575.42 MHz	/
MmWave Radars	76-77GHz	4W
AM radio	520-1710kHz	/

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 208

A

A/C Control Panel, Vehicle Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches..... 224
A/C Settings..... 202
About BYD App..... 203
Account Registration..... 203
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 178
Adjusting Front Seat with Power.... 70
Adjusting Head Supports..... 77
Adjusting Side Mirrors..... 92
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 81
Airbag Overview..... 15
Airbag Types..... 16
Ambient Light..... 91
Anti-lock Braking System..... 184
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 38
Around View Monitoring (AVM).... 172
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 130
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 223

B

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)..... 162
Bluetooth Call..... 193
Break-in Period..... 112

C

Carpet..... 223
Carry luggage in the trunk..... 119
Carrying Luggage..... 118
Charging..... 7
Charging Pile DC Charging*..... 101
Charging Port Immobilizer System.... 107
Charging Precautions..... 94
Charging Safety Warnings..... 94
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*. 179
Child Restraint System..... 21, 26
Clothes Hooks..... 207
Coolant Selection..... 230

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 39
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System..... 177
Discharging Equipment*..... 103
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 42
Disus-C*..... 126
Door Bins..... 204
Doors and Windows..... 224
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)*.... 175
Driving Precautions..... 131
Driving Safety Precautions..... 113
Driving Safety Systems..... 181
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption 125

E

Electronic Child Protection Lock.... 69
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).... 128
Emergency Call (E-Call)*..... 89
Emergency Locking Retractor Function..... 12
Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port..... 108
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 67

F

Fire Prevention..... 121
Front Cup Holders..... 205
Front Interior Lights..... 90
Fuel Selection..... 115
Function Definitions..... 198

Fuses..... 236

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 127
General Charging Troubleshooting 96
Gestures and Responses..... 193
Glasses Case..... 206
Glove Box..... 204
Grab Handles..... 206

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 87
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 175
High-Voltage Battery..... 109

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 244
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving..... 241
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 45
Individual Center and Vehicle Management..... 204
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 188
Installing Child Restraint Systems.... 22, 27
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 144
Intelligent Voice Assistant-BYD Assistant..... 194
Interior Cleaning..... 223
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 91
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 32, 34

K

KaraOK*..... 194
Keys..... 56

L

LCD Instrument Cluster..... 44
Leather..... 224
Light Switches..... 84
Lights..... 227
Locking/Unlocking the Trunk..... 64
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 60
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key 61
Low-Voltage Battery..... 110

M

Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 214
Maintenance Plan..... 214
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 222
My Car*..... 195

O

Opening and Closing the Hood.... 229
OTA Updates*..... 194
Other Applications..... 195
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 53

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 221
Panoramic Canopy Maintenance. 228
Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode..... 41
Power Window Switches..... 86

R

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch..... 63
Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key..... 62
Rear Interior Light Switches..... 91

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery 110
Refueling..... 115
Regenerative Braking Settings..... 106
Regular Maintenance..... 219
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 83
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 118
Roof Vents*..... 203

S

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 116
Scenario Mode..... 191
Seat Belt Maintenance..... 224
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Heating and Ventilation System* 76
Seat Precautions..... 69
Seatback Pockets..... 206
Second-Row Cup Holder..... 205
Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System..... 35
Self-Maintenance Precautions..... 225
Smart Access and Start System..... 67
Smart Charging..... 102
Snow Chains..... 133
Specifications..... 250
Starting the Vehicle..... 122
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 81
Steering Wheel Switches..... 79
Suggestions for Vehicle Use and Storage..... 114
Sun Visor..... 206

T

Target SOC Setting..... 105
Third Row Seat Cup Holder*..... 205
Third-Row Seats..... 77
Traffic Sign Recognition..... 155
Transponder Mounting..... 258
Trunk Lid Emergency Unlocking.... 66

U

USB Ports..... 207
Using AC Charging Piles..... 100
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*..... 98
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

V2L External Discharging..... 104
Vehicle Cleaning..... 221
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 220
Vehicle Data Processing..... 40
Vehicle Identification Number..... 255
Vehicle Nameplate..... 256
Vehicle Servicing..... 220
Vehicle Storage Instructions..... 228

W

Wading into Water..... 120
Warning Labels..... 256
Warning Lights/Indicators Description..... 47
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 87
Windshield Wipers and Washer..... 82
Winter Driving Precautions..... 132
Wiper Blades..... 233
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 208
Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 36

Y

Your Data Protection Rights..... 42

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
SOC	State of Charge	EDR	Event Data Recorder
ESC	Electronic Stability Controller	GPF	Gasoline Particulate Filter
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
ICC	Intelligent Cruise Control	FCW	Forward Collision Warning
DOW	Door Open Warning	RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking
ABS	Antilock Braking System	VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control
TCS	Traction Control System	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking
HDC	Hill Descent Control	MCB	Multi-Collision Brake
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number		